

Portable Manual

iR5075/5065/5055 Series

Canon

Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products. This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

Trademarks

The product names and company names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

Copyright

This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the written consent of Canon Inc.

COPYRIGHT © 2001 CANON INC.










Printed in Japan

Caution

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.



Symbols Used

This documentation uses the following symbols to indicate special information:

Symbol	Description
	Indicates an item of a non-specific nature, possibly classified as Note, Caution, or Warning.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid electric shocks.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid combustion (fire).
	Indicates an item prohibiting disassembly to avoid electric shocks or problems.
	Indicates an item requiring disconnection of the power plug from the electric outlet.
 Memo	Indicates an item intended to provide notes assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
 REF.	Indicates an item of reference assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
	Provides a description of a service mode.
	Provides a description of the nature of an error indication.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

1. Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.

In the diagrams,  represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow  indicates the direction of the electric signal.

The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.

2. In the digital circuits, '1' is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (*) as in "DRMD*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.

In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine."

Contents

Chapter 1 Maintenance and Inspection

1.1 Periodically Replaced Parts	1
1.1.1 Outline	1
1.1.2 Reader Unit	1
1.1.3 Printer Unit	1
1.2 Durables and Consumables	1
1.2.1 Outline	1
1.2.2 Reader unit	2
1.2.3 Printer Unit	2
1.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure	3
1.3.1 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure	3
1.3.2 Periodical Servicing Chart Reader Unit	3
1.3.3 Periodical Servicing Chart Printer Unit	4
1.3.4 Points to Note for Periodical Servicing	5
1.4 Cleaning	6
1.4.1 Cleaning Primary Toner Blocking Sheet	6
1.4.2 Cleaning Developing Toner Blocking Sheet	6
1.4.3 Cleaning Cleaner Scraper	6
1.4.4 Cleaning Photosensitive Drum	7
1.4.5 Cleaning the fixing oil dish and the fixing cleaning belt guide	8

Chapter 2 Standards and Adjustments

2.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure	9
2.1.1 Making Pre-Checks	9
2.1.2 Making Checks on the Printer Unit (1/2)	9
2.1.3 Making Checks on the Printer Unit (2/2)	11
2.1.4 Making Checks on the Reader Unit	12
2.1.5 Checking the Potential System	15
2.1.6 Checking the Surface Potential Control System	17
2.1.7 Potential Control System Conversion Table	19
2.1.8 Emergency Measures for a Fault in the Potential Sensor	24
2.2 Image Adjustments	25
2.2.1 Standards of Image Position	25
2.2.2 Checking the Image Position	25
2.2.3 Adjusting Side Registration	25
2.2.4 Adjusting the Image Leading Edge Margin	26
2.2.5 Adjusting the Left/Right Non-Image Width	26
2.2.6 Adjusting the Leading Edge Non-Image Width	26
2.3 Scanning System	27
2.3.1 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB	27
2.3.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit	27
2.3.3 Adjusting the Position of the No. 1/No. 2 Mirror Base	27

2.3.4When Replacing the Copyboard Glass	28
2.3.5When Replacing the Reading Glass	28
2.3.6When Replacing the Scanning Lamp	28
2.3.7After Replacing the Inverter PCB	28
2.4 Laser Exposure System.....	28
2.4.1When Replacing the Scanner Unit	28
2.5 Image Formation System.....	28
2.5.1Outline	28
2.5.2Routing Charging Wire	28
2.5.3Routing Grid for Primary Charging Assembly	29
2.5.4Adjusting Height of Charging Wire	29
2.5.5Mounting Cleaning Blade	30
2.5.6Removing Side Seal	30
2.6 Fixing System	30
2.6.1Applying Grease After Replacing the Fixing Roller	30
2.6.2Adjusting the Nip Width.....	31
2.6.3Adjusting the Fixing Web Solenoid (SL9).....	31
2.6.4After Replacing the Fixing Web	31
2.6.5Adjusting the Fixing Inlet Guide Solenoid (SL1)	31
2.6.6Adjusting the Position of the Fixing Inlet Guide.....	31
2.7 Electrical Components	31
2.7.1When Replacing DC Controller PCB	31
2.7.2When Replacing HVT PCB	32
2.7.3After Replacing the HDD.....	32
2.7.4When Replacing the Main Controller PCB.....	32
2.8 Pickup/Feeding System	32
2.8.1Points to Note When Mounting the Pickup Roller.....	32
2.8.2Points to Note When Mounting the Separation Roller	32
2.8.3The Points to Mount the Feeding Roller.....	32
2.8.4Adjusting the Pressure of the Deck/Cassette Separation Roller.....	33
2.8.5Adjusting the Pressure of the Manual Separation Roller.....	33
2.8.6Adjusting the Position of the Pickup Solenoid (SL3, SL4) of the Cassette 3/4	33
2.8.7Adjusting the Position of the Delivery Flapper Solenoid (SL5)	33
2.8.8Adjusting the Position of the Right Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL6)	33
2.8.9Adjusting the Position of the Left Deck Pickup Solenoid.....	34
2.8.10Mounting the Reversing Flapper Solenoid.....	34
2.8.11Attaching the Side Guide Timing Belt in the Manual Feed Tray Assembly	34
2.8.12Adjusting the Position of the Lifter Motor M20/M21 of the Cassette 3/4	34

Chapter 3 Error Code

3.1 Error Code Details	37
3.1.1Detail Error Code	37
3.1.2E602 in Detail	50
3.2 Error Code (SEND).....	52
3.2.1Results of Self-Diagnosis.....	52
3.2.2Error Codes.....	53
3.3 Jam Code	58
3.3.1Jam Code (machine proper).....	58

3.3.2Jam Code (finisher-related).....	59
3.3.3Jam Code (ADF-related)	60
3.4 Alarm Code.....	61
3.4.1Alarm Code.....	61

Chapter 4 User Mode Items

4.1 User Mode Items.....	63
4.1.1Common Settings	63
4.1.2Timer Settings	64
4.1.3Adjustment/Cleaning	64
4.1.4Report Output.....	65
4.1.5System Control Settings	65
4.1.6Copier Specifications	67
4.1.7Transmission/Reception Settings.....	68
4.1.8Box Settings.....	69
4.1.9Printer Settings.....	70
4.1.10Address Book Settings.....	71
4.1.11Voice Guide Settings.....	72

Chapter 5 Service Mode

5.1 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode).....	73
5.1.1 COPIER	73
5.1.1.1 COPIER List	73
5.1.2 FEEDER	78
5.1.2.1 FEEDER List.....	78
5.2 I/O (I/O Display Mode)	79
5.2.1Outline	79
5.2.2R-CON	79
5.2.3FEEDER.....	80
5.2.4SORTER	81
5.2.5MN-CON.....	86
5.2.6P-CON	86
5.3 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode).....	90
5.3.1 COPIER	90
5.3.1.1 COPIER List	90
5.3.2 FEEDER	94
5.3.2.1 FEEDER List.....	94
5.3.3 SORTER.....	94
5.3.3.1 SORTER List.....	94
5.4 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode).....	94
5.4.1 COPIER	94
5.4.1.1 COPIER List	94
5.4.2 FEEDER	103
5.4.2.1 FEEDER List.....	103
5.5 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode)	104
5.5.1 COPIER	104
5.5.1.1 COPIER List	104

5.5.2 FEEDER.....	126
5.5.2.1 FEEDER List.....	126
5.5.3 SORTER	127
5.5.3.1 SORTER List	127
5.5.4 BOARD.....	127
5.5.4.1 BOARD List.....	127
5.6 TEST (Test Print Mode)	127
5.6.1 COPIER.....	127
5.6.1.1 COPIER List.....	127
5.7 COUNTER (Counter Mode)	129
5.7.1 COPIER.....	129
5.7.1.1 COPIER List.....	129

Chapter 6 Outline of Components

6.1 Clutch/Solenoid	133
6.1.1Clutches and Solenoids	133
6.2 Motor	134
6.2.1Motors	134
6.3 Fan	137
6.3.1Fans	137
6.4 Sensor.....	139
6.4.1Sensors.....	139
6.5 Switch.....	144
6.5.1Switches	144
6.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others	145
6.6.1Lamps, Heaters, and Others	145
6.7 PCBs	147
6.7.1PCBs	147

Chapter 7 System Construction

7.1 Construction.....	151
7.1.1Functional Construction	151
7.1.2Wiring Diagram of the Major PCBs	151
7.1.3Controlling the Main Motor (M2)	152
7.2 System Construction	153
7.2.1System Configuration with Pickup/Delivery Accessories (230V)EUR	153
7.2.2System Configuration with Printing/Transmission Accessories (230V)EUR	154
7.2.3Functions and Printing/Transmission Accessories (230V)	155
7.3 Product Specifications.....	155
7.3.1Product Specifications.....	155
7.4 Function List.....	157
7.4.1Paper Types.....	157
7.4.2Printing Speed	157
7.4.3Paper Types/Printing Speed (K paper).....	158

Chapter 8 Upgrading

8.1 Upgrading.....	159
8.1.1 Outline of Upgrading the Machine	159
8.1.2 Outline of the Service Support Tool.....	159

Chapter 1 Maintenance and Inspection

1.1 Periodically Replaced Parts

1.1.1 Outline

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Some parts of the machine must be replaced on a periodical basis for the machine to maintain a specific level of performance. They must be replaced regardless of the presence/absence of external changes or damage, as the performance of the machine will be considerably affected once they fail. If possible, plan any replacement to coincide with a scheduled visit.



The intervals indicated may vary depending on the site environment and user habit.

- Checking the Timing of Replacement

The timing of replacement may be checked using the following service mode items:

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1

1.1.2 Reader Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The reader unit does not have parts that require periodical replacement.

1.1.3 Printer Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-1-1

As of December 2006

No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Life	Remarks
1	Primary, pre-transfer, transfer, separation charging wire	FB4-3687-000	AR	500,000	(*)
2	Primary grid wire	FY1-0883-000	AR	500,000	
3	thermistor unit	FK2-5252-000	1	500,000	Main thermister + shutter thermister
4	Sub thermistor	FM2-4161-000	1	500,000	
5	Primary charging wire cleaner 1	FL2-4271-000	1	500,000	
6	Primary charging wire cleaner 2	FL2-4272-000	2	500,000	
7	Transfer charging wire cleaner 1	FL2-4271-000	1	500,000	
8	Transfer charging wire cleaner 2	FL2-4272-000	1	500,000	
9	Separation charging wire cleaner	FF5-3090-000	2	500,000	
10	Pre-transfer charging wire cleaner	FF5-3090-000	1	500,000	
11	Air filter 1	FC6-3482-000	1	500,000	
12	Air filter 2	FC6-3483-000	1	500,000	
13	Ozone filter	FC6-3693-000	1	500,000	

*: Do not use the old type (gold plated). After replacement of the charge wire, be sure to execute wire cleaning in service mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRECLN)

T-1-2

Chemical replaced parts

As of December 2006

No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Life	Remarks
1	Photosensitive Drum	F43-7801-000	1	3,000,000	
2	Collecting toner bottle	F42-7901-000/ F42-7911-000/ F42-7921-000	1	44,000(TBD)	6% original :0.050g/A4 1Copy(TBD)

1.2 Durables and Consumables

1.2.1 Outline

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Some parts of the machine may have to be replaced once or more over the period of machine warranty because of wear or damage. Replace them as needed by referring to the table of estimated lives (expressed in terms of the number of prints they make).

Making Checks When Replacing Durables

Use the following service mode items to find out when to replace parts:

- Machine

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1

- Accessory

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2

1.2.2 Reader unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The reader unit does not have parts that are classified as "consumables" or "durables."

1.2.3 Printer Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-1-3

As of December 2006

No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Life	Remarks
1	Developing cylinder	FM2-9641-000	1	1,000,000	
2	Developing assembly roll	FB6-6569-000	2	1,000,000	
3	Cleaner separation claw	FB2-6899-000	3	500,000	
4	Cleaning blade	FA6-3995-000	1	1,000,000	Both edges are used; each for 500,000; apply toner upon replacement
5	Primary corona assembly	FM2-3069-000	1	1,000,000	
6	Transfer/separation corona assembly	FM2-9716-000	1	1,000,000	
7	Pre-transfer corona assembly	FM2-9647-000	1	1,000,000	
8	Pre-separation charging assembly scraper	FA4-1867-000	1	500,000	
9	Fixing roller	FC4-4274-000	1	500,000	*1
10	Pressure roller	FC7-4237-000 FC7-4236-000(JPN only)	1	500,000	*2
11	Fixing web	FY1-1157-000	1	500,000	
12	Pressure roller bearing	XG9-0636-000	2	500,000	
12	Insulating bushing (front/rear)	FC6-3502-000	2	500,000	*3
13	Static eliminator (pressure roller)	FC7-4287-000	1	500,000	
14	Delivery upper separation claw	FB5-3625-000	6	500,000	
15	Delivery lower separation claw	FA2-9037-000	2	1,000,000	
16	Pickup roller rear	FF5-7830-000	4	500,000	Real use number of sheets (Each holder uses 1 pc.)
17	Pickup roller front	FF5-7829-000	4	500,000	Real use number of sheets (Each holder uses 1 pc.)
18	Pickup/feeding roller (deck, cassette)	FB6-0615-000	4	500,000	Real use number of sheets (Each holder uses 2 pc.)
19	Separation roller (deck, cassette)	FB5-6586-000	4	500,000	Real use number of sheets (Each holder uses 1 pc.)
20	Pickup/feeding roller (manual feed roller)	FB1-8581-000	1	120,000	Real use number of sheets
21	Separation roller (manual feed roller)	FB5-0873-000	1	120,000	Real use number of sheets



*1 As the fixing roller is used more and more, its surface tends to become discolored because of heat. The change, however, will not affect the performance of the roller. Also, note that the roller surface varies in color among manufacturers and the fact will not affect the roller performance.

*2 As the pressure roller is used more and more, its rubber surface can start to discolor. The change, however, will not affect its performance or output images. Further, the physical properties of the roller can permit its surface to start to wrinkle. The roller, however, is free of wrinkles when it is heated and its performance will not be affected, thus not requiring replacement.

*3 Replace simultaneously with fixing roller. When you replace bushings, apply about 20 mg of grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) on the inner and outer surfaces of the bushing until there is a white coating covering the entire surfaces.

1.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure

1.3.1 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



- As a rule, provide scheduled servicing every 250,000 prints.
- Check with the Service Book before setting out for a scheduled service visit, and take parts for which replacement is expected.
- If the power plug is left connected for a long time in a place subject to dust, humidity, or oil smoke, a fire hazard is a possibility (i.e., the dust collecting around the plug can absorb moisture, resulting in insulating failure). Be sure to disconnect the power plug on a periodical basis, and wipe off the dust and dirt collecting around it.

<Work Procedure>

- 1) Report to the person in charge, and check the general condition.
- 2) Record the counter reading, and check the faulty prints.
- 3) Make the following checks, and clean/adjust the items that are indicated:

T-1-4

Items	
Test copy	against image density standard
	for soiling of back of paper
	for clarity of characters
	for margin
	for fixing
	misplaced registration, soiled back of paper
	for margin standards (single-sided print)
	leading edge: 4.0+1.5/-1.0mm
	left edge: 2.5+/- 1.5mm
	(double-sided print)
	leading edge: 4.0+1.5/-1.0mm
	left edge: 2.5+/- 2.0mm

- 4) Check the waste toner case.

If half full or more, dispose of the waste toner in a vinyl bag or the like for collection; or, replace the waste toner case.



- If you need to dispose of the waste toner, be sure to do so in strict accordance with the regulations imposed by the local authorities.
- Do not dispose of waste toner in a fire. Doing so may cause an explosion.

- 5) Clean the copyboard glass and the reading glass.

- 6) Make test copies.

- 7) Make sample copies.

- 8) Check the operation of the leakage breaker.

With the power switch at ON, push the test switch of the leakage breaker to see that it operates normally (i.e., the breaker switch shifts to the OFF side to cut off the power).

If the leakage breaker fails to operate normally, replace it, and run a check once again.

<Resetting the Breaker>

When you have made the check, turn off the main power switch, and turn on the breaker switch, and then turn the main power switch back on.

- 9) Put the sample copies in order, and clean up the area around the machine.

- 10) Record the final counter reading.

- 11) Fill out the Service Book, and report to the person in charge. Be sure to update the history of checks on the leakage breaker in the Service Book.

1.3.2 Periodical Servicing Chart Reader Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



Do not use solvents or oils other than those indicated.

T-1-5

Unit	Location	Intervals	Remarks
		as needed	

Original exposure system	Copyboard glass	clean	
	ADF reading glass	clean	
	Scanner rail	clean/lubricate	Silicone oil (FY9-6011)
	Scanner mirror (No.1 through No.3 mirrors)	clean	
	Reflecting plate	clean	

1.3.3 Periodical Servicing Chart Printer Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



Do not use solvents or oils other than those indicated.

T-1-6

Unit name	Part	Intervals				Remarks
		Upon installation	every 250,000	every 500,000	every 1,000,000	
Externals/controls	Ozone filter			Replace		
	Air filter 1			Replace		
	Air filter 2			Replace		
	Dust-proofing filter (primary)		Clean			Remove dust from surface.
Laser optical path	Dust-proof glass		Clean			
Charging assembly	Charging wire (primary, pretransfer, transfer/separation)	Clean		Replace		After replacement, execute wire cleaning 5 times.
	Charging wire cleaner (primary, pretransfer, transfer/separation)			Replace		Replace with charging wire simultaneously.
	Grid wire (primary)	Clean	Clean	Replace		
	Charging assembly shielding plate (each charging assembly)	Clean	Clean			
	Primary antistray toner sheet		Clean			
	Roller electrode	Clean	Clean			
Photosensitive drum	Photosensitive drum		Clean			Use alcohol and drum cleaning powder (CK-0429).
	Electrode (for slip ring of drum heater)				Clean / Lubricate	Clean with alcohol; 1) electrode, 2) protruding wall of electrode (where FY9-6008 is applied). - Charge collecting brush
	Drum separation claw		Clean	Replace		In a high temperature and high pressure environment, replaces it by 250,000
Developing assembly	Developing cylinder	Inspect				
	Developing assembly roll		Clean			
	Anti stray toner sheet		Clean			
Cleaner	Side scraper			Clean		
	collecting toner bottle holder		Clean			

Unit name	Part	Intervals				Remarks
		Upon installation	every 250,000	every 500,000	every 1,000,000	
Fixing assembly	Inlet guide		Clean			
	Web	Inspect				
	Oil dish			Clean		
	Web guide			Clean		
	Thermistor unit		Clean	Replace		
	Sub thermistor		Clean	Replace		
	left stay		Clean			Both sides driving shaft
	Static eliminator (pressure roller)			Replace		
Delivery assembly	Separation claw (upper, lower)		Clean			
	Internal delivery roll		Clean			
	External delivery roll		Clean			
Toner collection area	Collecting toner box		Inspect			Inspect case, and remove toner.
Pickup/ feeding assembly	Transfer guide		Clean			
	Registration roller (upper, lower)		Clean			
	Feeding belt		Clean			
	Feeding rollers		Clean			

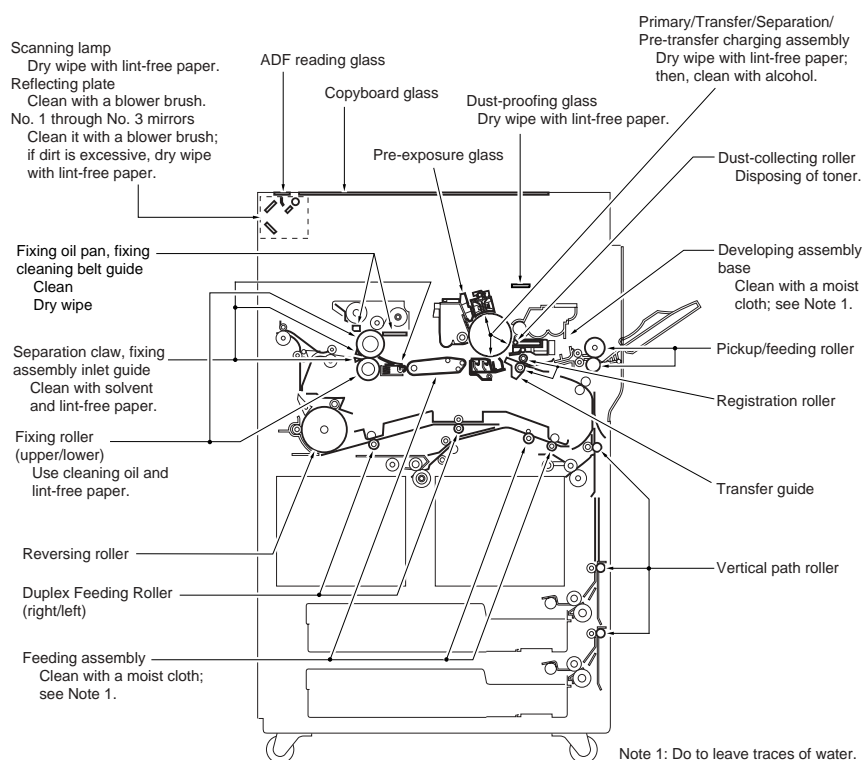
1.3.4 Points to Note for Periodical Servicing

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Unless otherwise instructed, clean with lint-free paper and alcohol.



- Make a thorough check of the block (front, rear) for melting by leakage, deformation by heat, cracking, discoloration (yellowing). If a fault is found, replace the part with a new one immediately.
- Check the block (front, rear) including its inside.
- Do not use a cloth on which metal powder is found.
- If you have used solvent, make sure that the part has dried completely before mounting it back to the machine.
- Do not use a moist cloth unless specifically indicated.
- Be sure to provide scheduled servicing/replacement at the specified intervals.



Note 1: Do to leave traces of water.

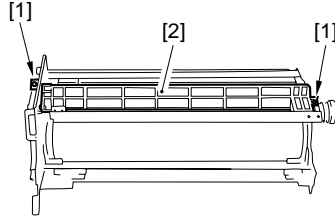
F-1-1

1.4 Cleaning

1.4.1 Cleaning Primary Toner Blocking Sheet

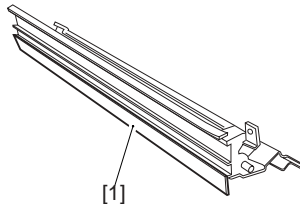
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Remove the process unit.
- 2) Remove the potential sensor rail stay [2].
 - 2 screws [1]



F-1-2

- 3) Clean the primary toner blocking sheet [1].

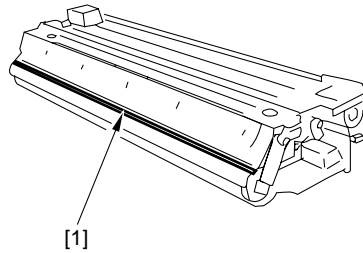


F-1-3

1.4.2 Cleaning Developing Toner Blocking Sheet

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Remove the developing assembly, and clean the developing toner blocking sheet [1].

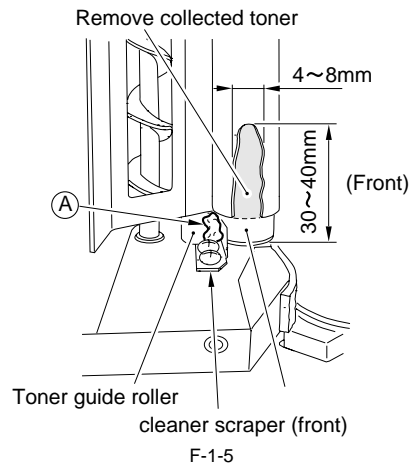


F-1-4

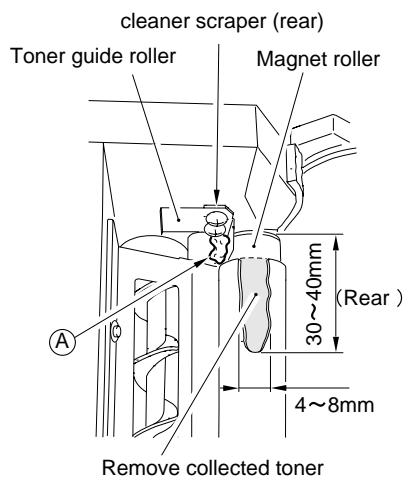
1.4.3 Cleaning Cleaner Scraper

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Remove the cleaning blade.
- 2) Remove any paper lint accumulated at the tip of the cleaner scraper (A; the area between the magnet roller and the toner guide roller) with tweezers.
- 3) Remove the toner from the surface of the magnet roller. (Roll a paper into a U-shape to scoop it up.)



F-1-5



F-1-6

- 4) Rotate the magnet roller in the clockwise direction (viewing from the front).
- 5) Repeat the step 3 through 4 until the area from which toner was removed in the step 3 is once again coated with an even layer of toner.

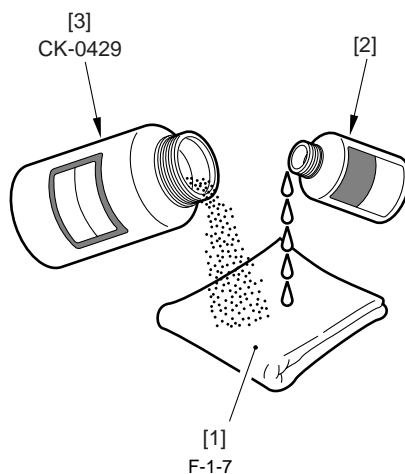
1.4.4 Cleaning Photosensitive Drum

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



Do not rotate the magnet roller during work. Otherwise, waste toner may fall through the cleaner assembly.

- 1) Remove the process unit.
- 2) Remove the photosensitive drum.
- 3) Moisten lint-free paper [1] with 5 to 10 cc of alcohol solutions [2]; then, pour 0.2 to 0.3 g of the drum cleaning powder (CK-0429) [3] on the lint-free paper.
- 4) While butting the lint-free paper relatively strongly against the photosensitive drum, wipe the surface of the drum from the front to the rear and from the rear to the front.

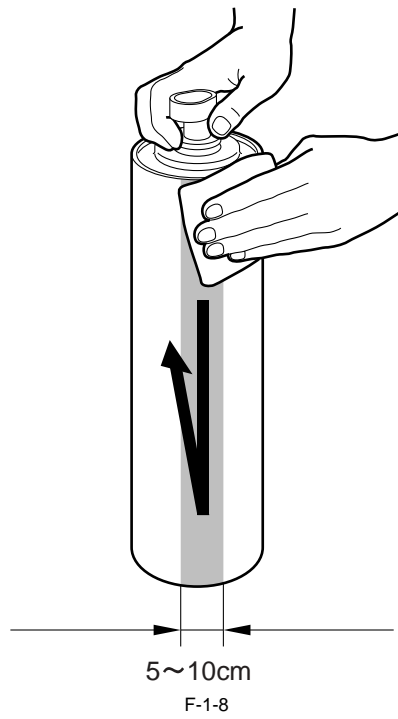


F-1-7



- Keep the widths of cleaning to 5 to 10 cm in the peripheral direction of the drum.
- Move the lint-free paper back and forth 15 to 20 times over a single area. Forcing the lint-free paper will not affect the life of the drum.

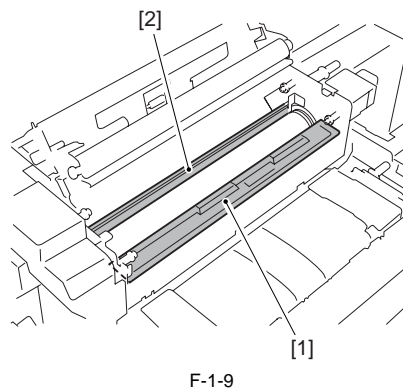
- 5) After the alcohol has evaporated, dry wipe the surface with the lint-free paper. If the area is uneven, go back to the step 4, and increase the back-and-forth movements.
- 6) Rotate the drum for the width (5 to 10 cm), and repeat the step 3 through 5 until the entire area of the surface has been cleaned.



1.4.5 Cleaning the fixing oil dish and the fixing cleaning belt guide

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Detach the fixing web.
- 2) Clean the surface of the silicone oil tray [1].
- 3) Clean the surface of the fixing cleaning web guide [2].



Chapter 2 Standards and Adjustments

2.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure

2.1.1 Making Pre-Checks

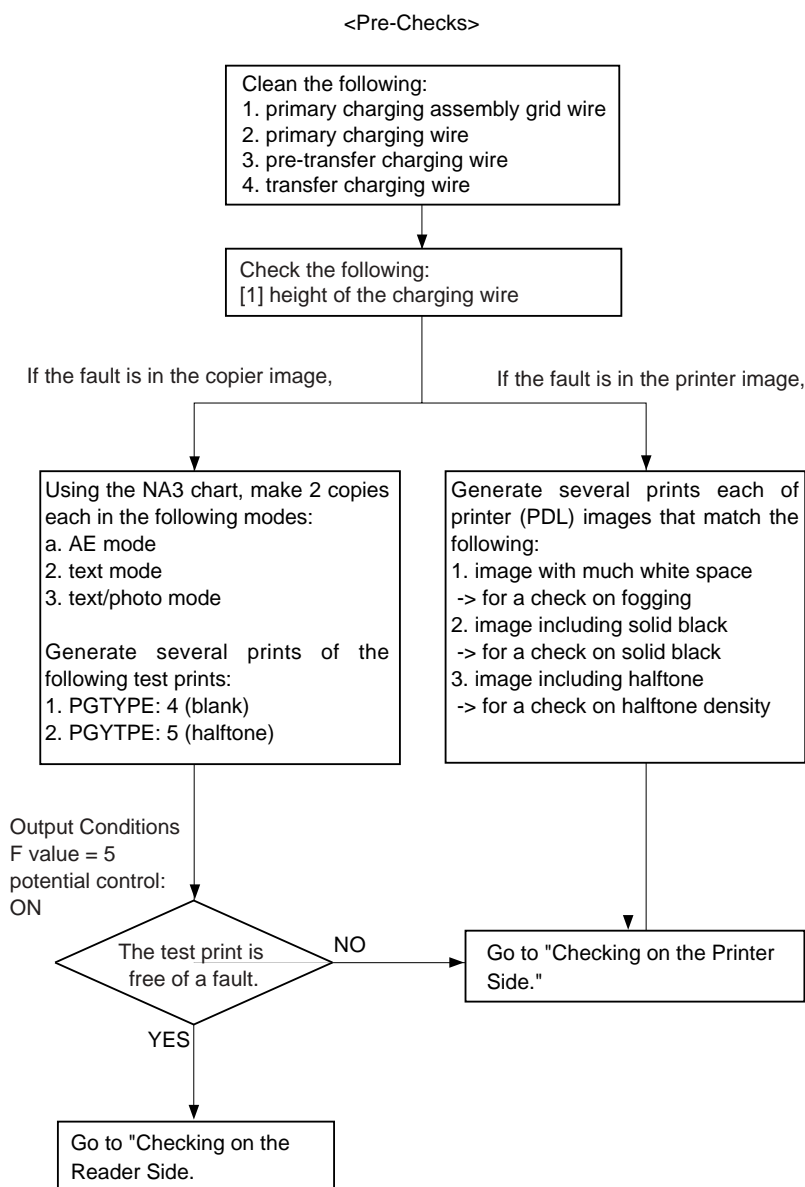
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



Points to Note When Making a Check on the Printer Side

The machine's potential control mechanisms consist of those for copier image output and those for printer (PDL) image output, and permit independent adjustment of service mode potential control parameters.

If an image fault occurs, be sure to first find out which is at fault, prepare an image (data) accordingly, and then make appropriate adjustments.

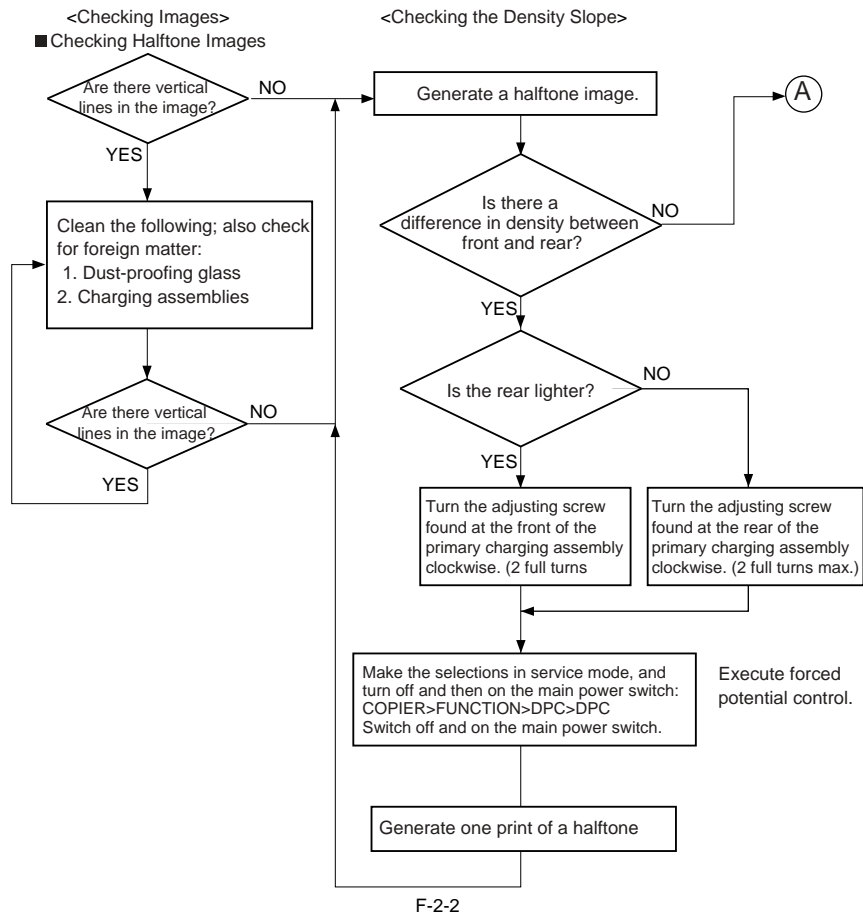


F-2-1

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE
COPIER > OPTION > BODY PO-CNT

2.1.2 Making Checks on the Printer Unit (1/2)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



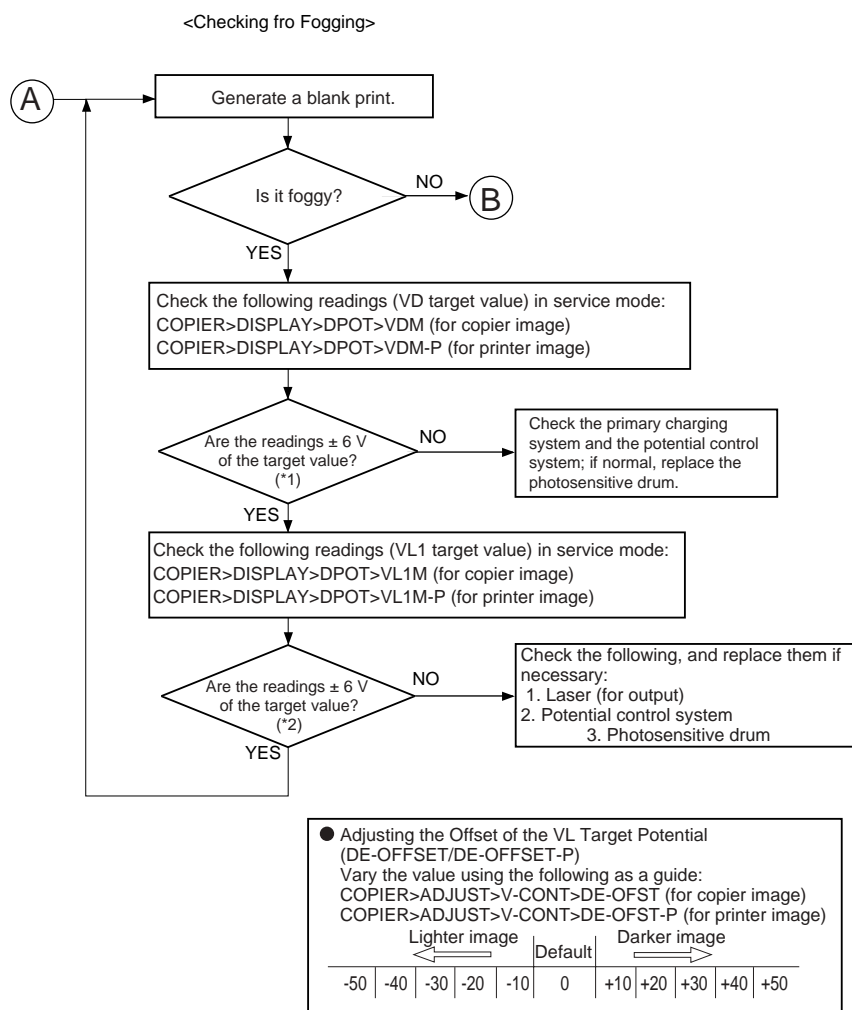
COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC



1. If there still is a difference in density after giving the adjusting screw 2 turns (each turn causing a change of about 0.7 mm), check the scanning lamp and the scanner for soiling.
2. When making a clockwise turn, be sure that the intervals between wire grid runs are not larger than 9 mm.
When making a counterclockwise turn, be sure that the intervals between wire grid runs are not smaller than 7.5 mm.

MEMO:

Moving the wire from the photosensitive drum causes the image to be lighter, while moving it closer causes the images to be darker.

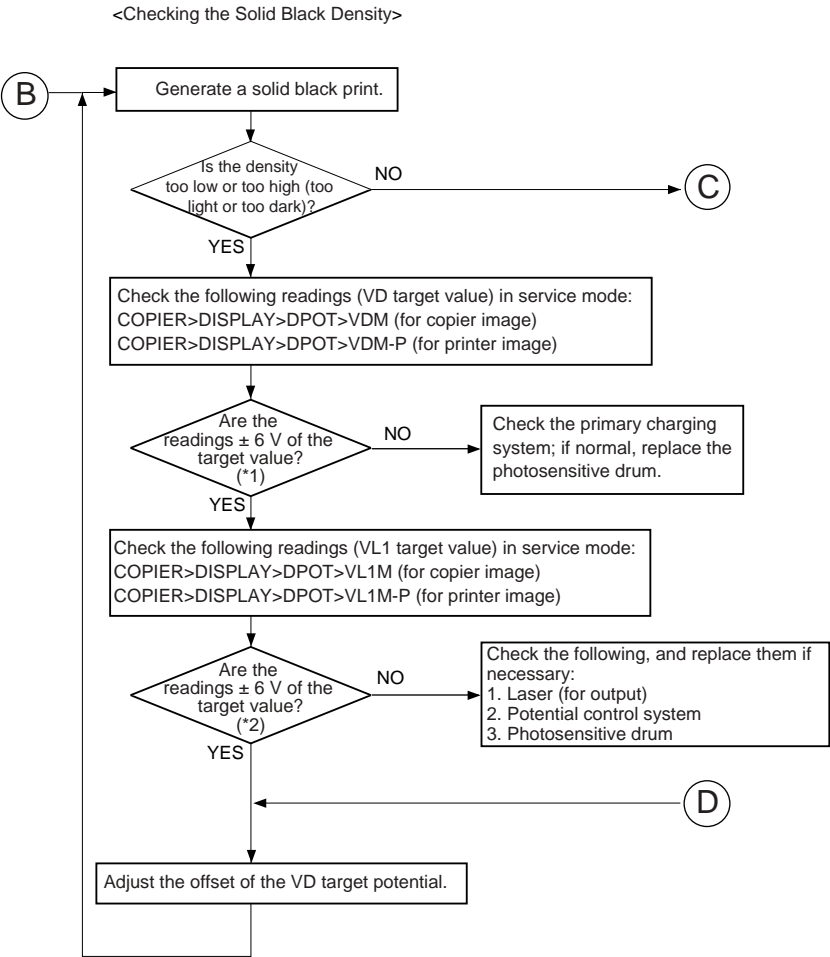


F-2-3

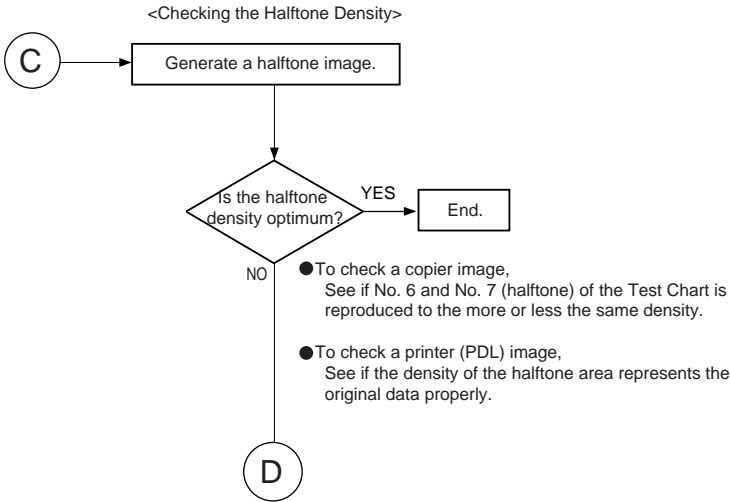
COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VDM
 COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VDM-P
 COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VL1M
 COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VL1M-P
 COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > DE-OFST
 COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > DE-OFS-P

2.1.3 Making Checks on the Printer Unit (2/2)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



F-2-4



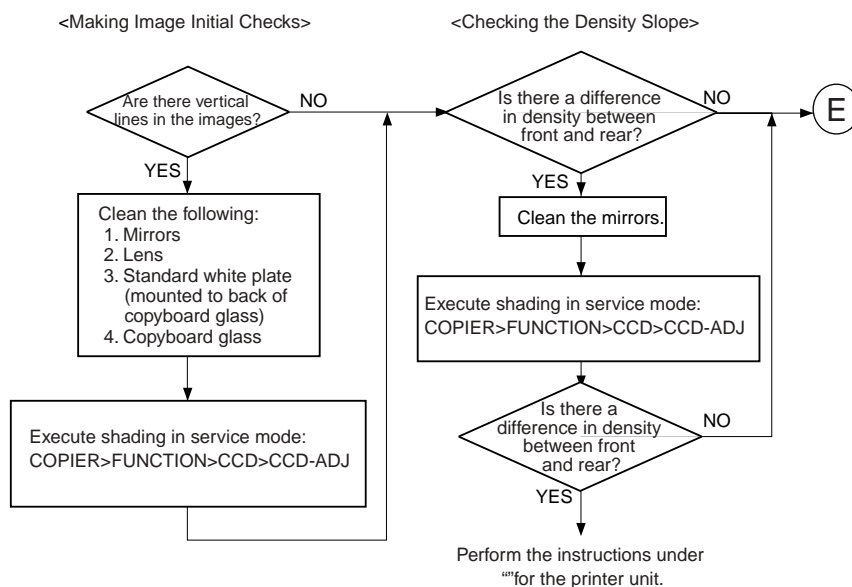
● Adjusting the Offset Value of the VD Target Potential (VD-OFFSET/VD-OFFSET-P)
COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>VD-OFST (for copier image)
COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>VD-VD-OFST-P (for printer image)

Lighter image					Default	Darker image					
←							→				
-5	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	

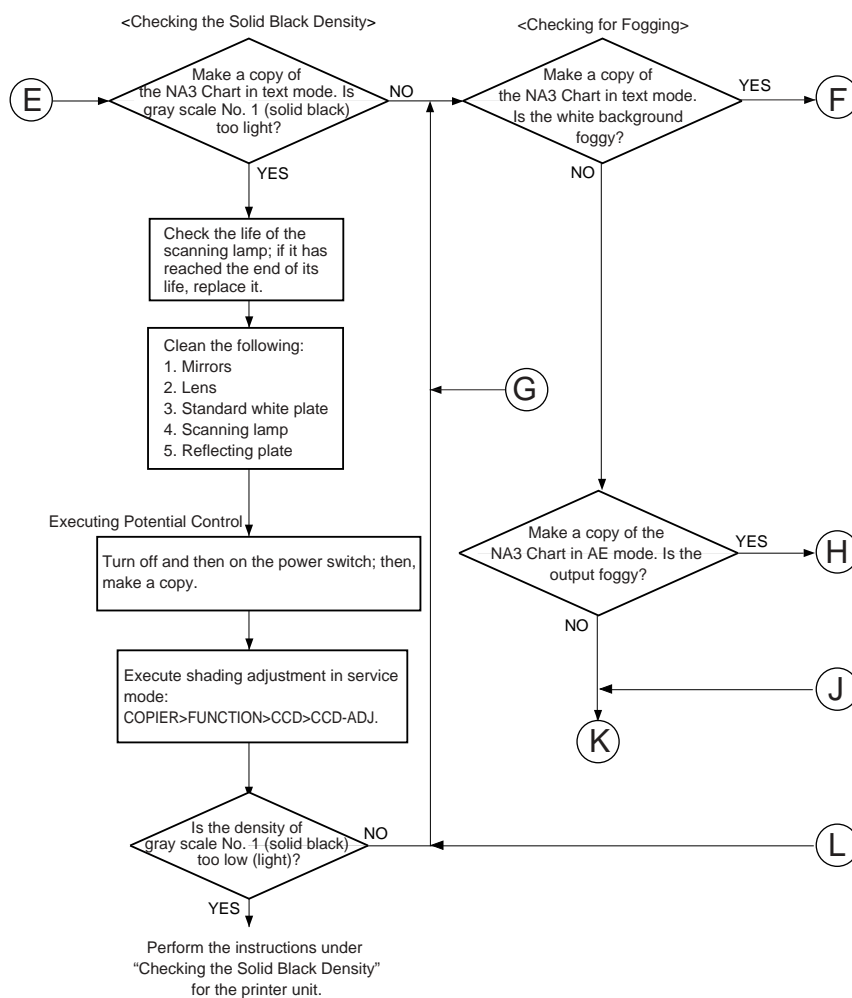
F-2-5

2.1.4 Making Checks on the Reader Unit

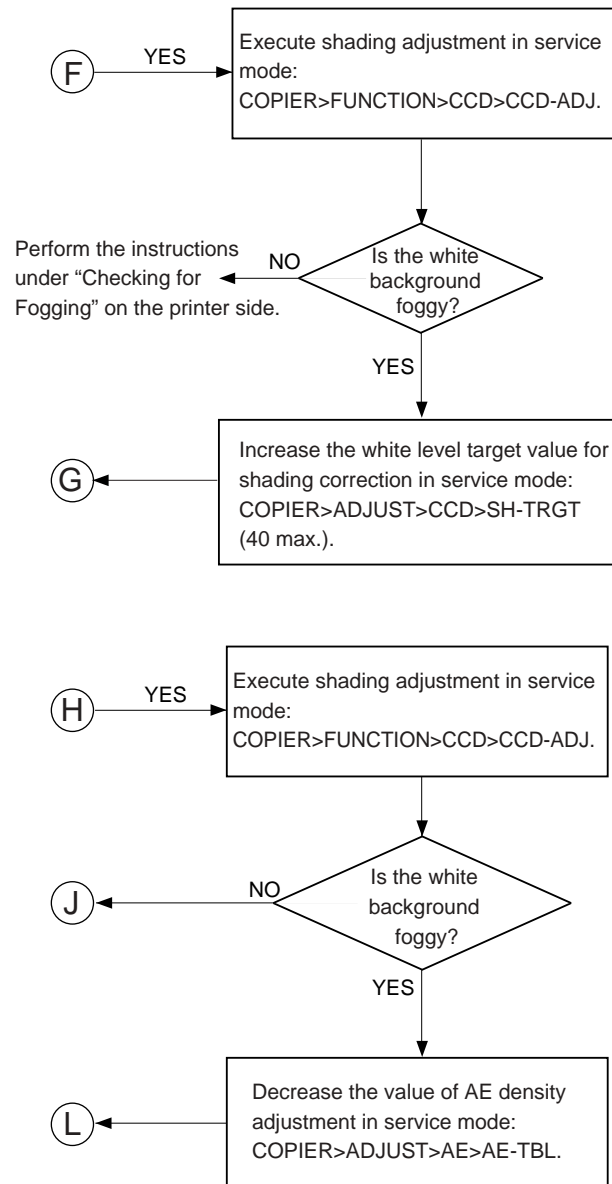
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



F-2-6

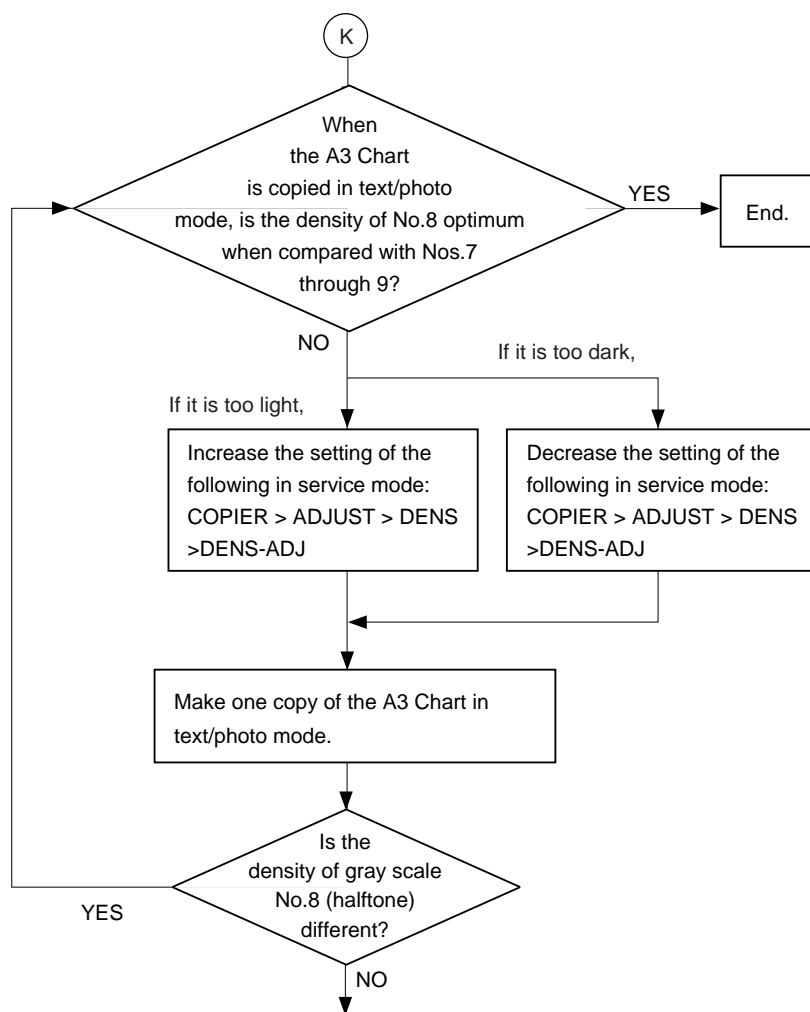


F-2-7



F-2-8

<Checking Halftone Density>

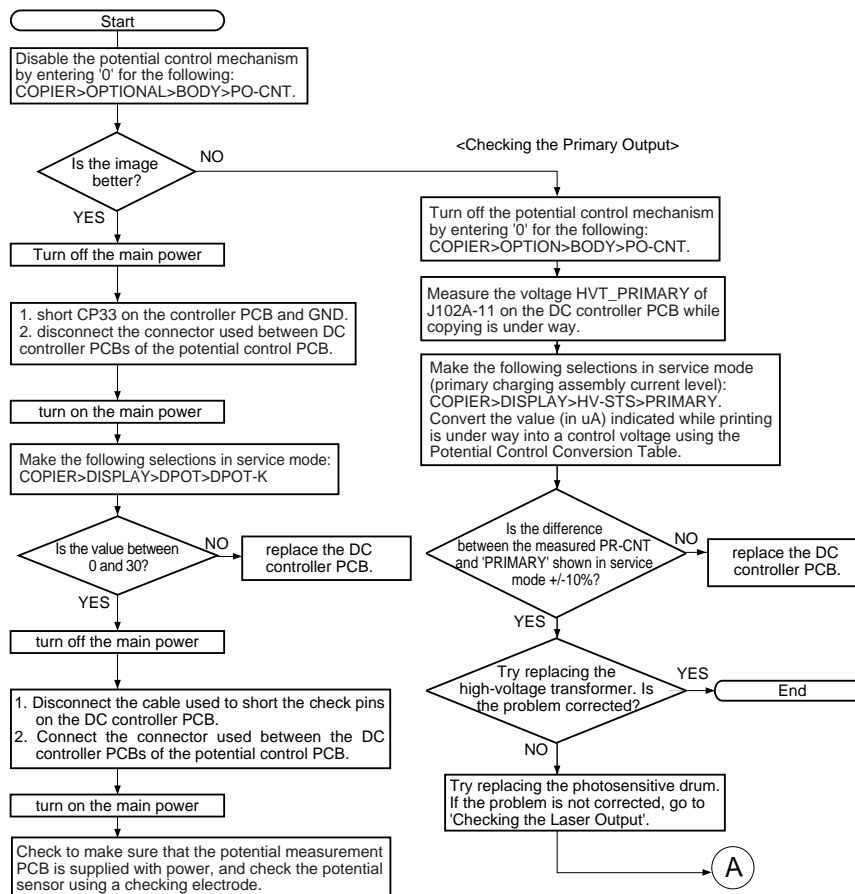


Go to "Checking the Solid Black Density" for the printer unit.

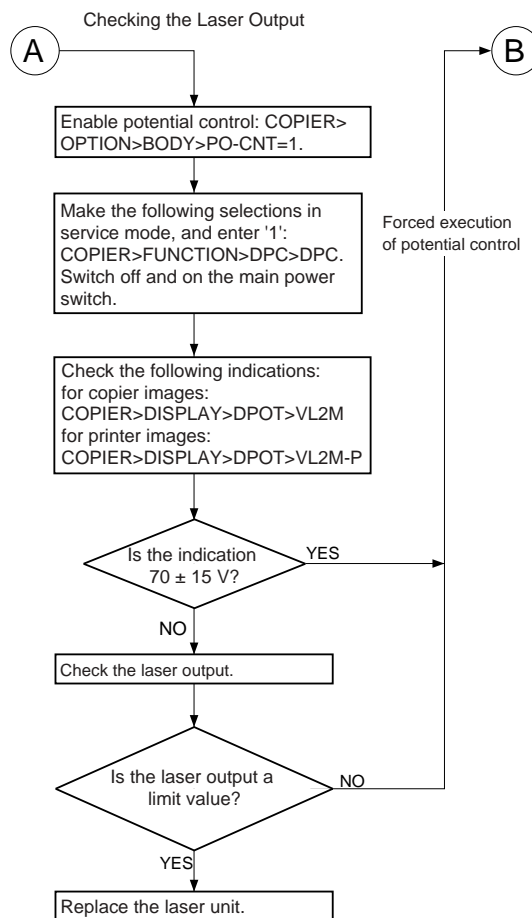
F-2-9

2.1.5 Checking the Potential System

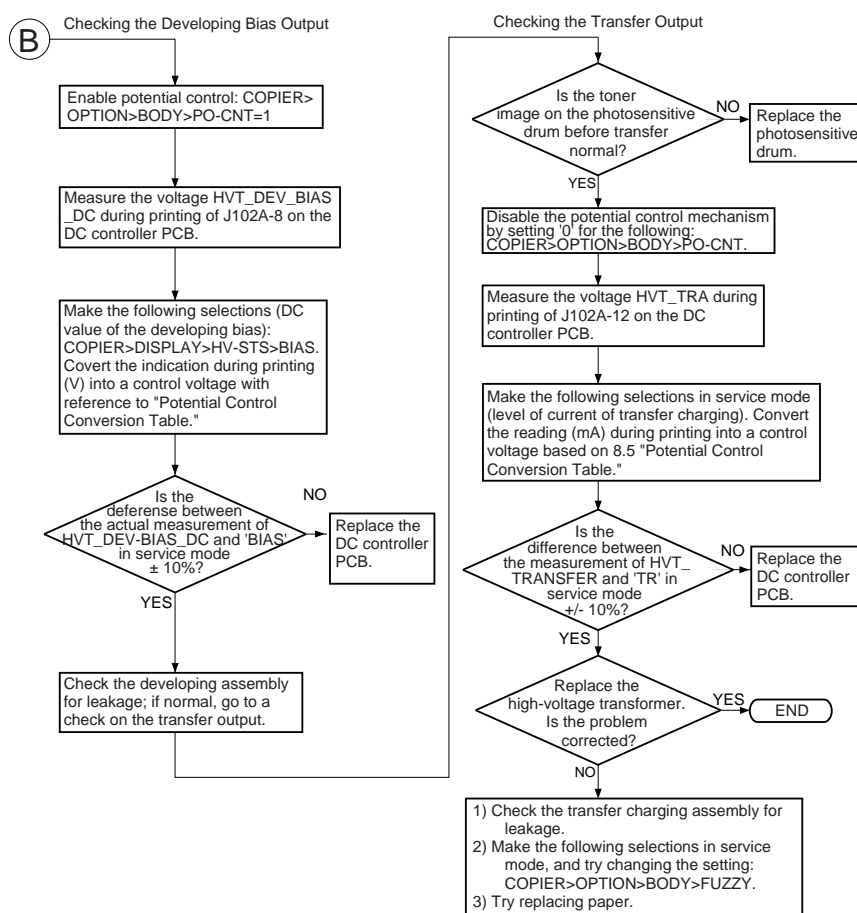
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



F-2-10



F-2-11



F-2-12

2.1.6 Checking the Surface Potential Control System

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

1. Outline

If an image fault occurs, it is necessary to find out whether the cause is in the static image formation block including the photosensitive drum and the potential control system or if it is caused at time of development or transfer.

An image fault may be isolated by finding out whether the surface potential is correct using service mode.

2. Disabling the Auto Control Mechanisms

As a means of checking the potential control system, the auto control mechanism may be disabled (hereafter, non-auto control mode).

If the image fault in question is more or less corrected when the machine is in non-auto control mode, you can suspect the potential measurement unit and the DC controller PCB as the cause of the fault.

You can also take advantage of non-auto control mode as a tentative remedy when the auto control mechanism has a fault.



When the machine is in non-auto control mode, all settings used for corona current control, laser power control, and developing bias control will be automatically be set to default settings.

Using Non-Auto Control Mode

1) Make the following selections in service mode, enter '0', and press the OK key:

COPIER>OPTION>BODY>PO-CNT.

2) Press the Reset key twice.

3. Making a Zero-Level check

A "zero-level check" is a check made to see if the control mechanism of the DC controller PCB is identifying a 0-V level without fail when the drum surface potential is 0 V.

A zero-level check may be made in either of 2 ways, and you can use it to decide whether the DC controller PCB and the potential measurement PCB is free of error:

Method 1: use it to find out if the level shift circuit on the DC controller PCB is free of a fault

Method 2: use it to find out if the potential control circuit is free of a fault

(1) Method 1

1) Turn off the main power switch.

2) Remove the upper rear over.

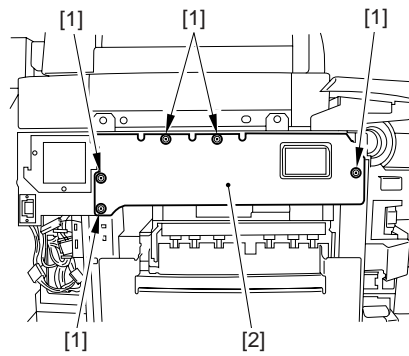
3) Short GP33 on the DC controller PCB and GND using a cable equipped with an alligator clips or probes on both ends.



When shorting CP33 and GND, take full care to avoid contact between the clip/probe and the pattern of the PCB and other elements.

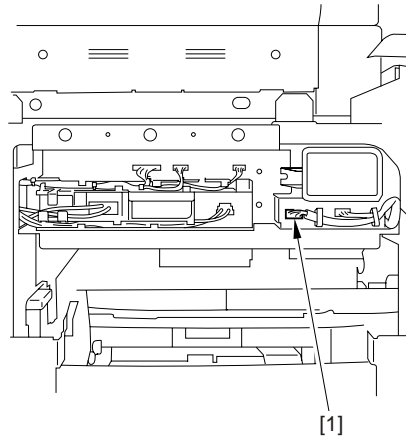
4) Remove the left cover (upper), delivery cover, and left cover (middle).

5) Remove the 5 screws [1], and detach the PCB cover [2].



F-2-13

- 6) Disconnect the connector [1] connected to the DC controller PCB of the potential control PCB.

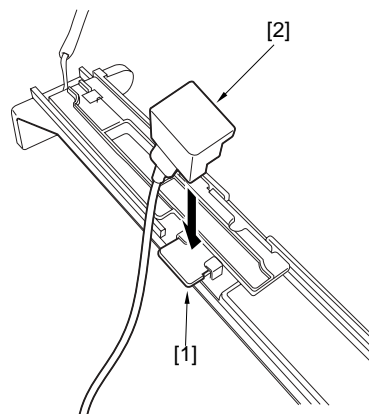


F-2-14

- 7) Close the front door, and turn on the main power switch.
 8) Make the following selections in service mode:
 COPIER>DISPLAY>DPOT>DPOT-K; then, check to see that the indication during initial rotation is between 0 and 30. If not, suspect a fault in the DC controller PCB.
 9) Turn off the main power switch.
 10) Remove the jumper wire found on the DC control PCB.
 11) Connect the connector of the potential control PCB.
 12) Mount the PCB cover, left cover (middle), delivery cover, and left cover (upper); then, close the front cover.
 13) Mount the upper rear cover.
 14) Turn on the main power switch.

(2) Method 2

- 1) Disable the potential control mechanism so that the machine is in non-auto control mode.
 2) Turn off the main power switch.
 3) Remove the potential sensor from the machine.
 4) Connect the connector of the potential sensor to the connector of the machine.
 5) Fit the potential sensor checking electrode (FY9-3012) [2] to the potential sensor [1].

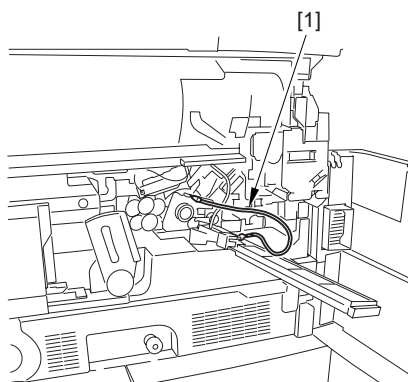


F-2-15



When fitting the checking electrode to the potential sensor, take full care so that the electrode will not come into contact with the potential sensor cover.

- 6) Connect the clip [1] of the checking electrode to the machine frame (GND).



F-2-16



Be sure never to bring the clip [1] into contact with the sensor cover. Also, be sure to fit it sufficiently away from the sensor window.

- 7) Fit the door switch actuator into the door switch assembly.
- 8) Turn on the main power switch.



When you have turned on the main power switch, be sure never to touch the potential sensor.

- 9) Make the following selections in service mode:
COPIER>DISPLAY>DPOT>DPOT-K. Then, check to see that the indication during initial rotation is between 0 and 30.

MEMO:

1. If the result of Method 1 is as indicated but that of Method 2 is not, suspect soiling of the sensor and a fault in the potential measurement unit.
2. If the results of both Methods 1 and 2 are as indicated, assume that the signal path and operation from the potential sensor unit to the microprocessor on the DC controller PCB are normal.

- 10) Turn off the main power switch.
- 11) Detach the potential sensor checking electrode.
- 12) Mount the potential sensor.
- 13) Turn on the main power switch.
- 14) Enable the potential control mechanism.

2.1.7 Potential Control System Conversion Table

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-2-1					
Control (V)	Primary (uA)	Developing bias (V)	Pre-transfer (uA)	Transfer (uA)	Separation (uA)
3.00	1,400	0	0	440	100
3.05	1,391	3	-2	437	96
3.10	1,382	7	-4	434	92
3.15	1,373	11	-6	431	88
3.20	1,365	15	-8	429	85
3.25	1,356	18	-10	426	81
3.30	1,347	22	-12	426	77
3.35	1,338	26	-14	420	73
3.40	1,330	30	-16	418	70
3.45	1,321	33	-18	415	66
3.50	1,312	37	-20	412	62
3.55	1,303	41	-22	409	58
3.60	1,295	45	-24	407	55

Control (V)	Primary (uA)	Developing bias (V)	Pre-transfer (uA)	Transfer (uA)	Separation (uA)
3.65	1,286	48	-26	404	51
3.70	1,277	52	-28	401	47
3.75	1,268	56	-30	398	43
3.80	1,260	60	-33	396	40
3.85	1,251	63	-35	393	36
3.90	1,242	67	-37	390	32
3.95	1,233	71	-39	387	28
4.00	1,225	75	-41	385	25
4.05	1,216	78	-43	382	21
4.10	1,207	82	-45	379	17
4.15	1,198	86	-47	376	13
4.20	1,190	90	-49	374	10
4.25	1,181	93	-51	371	6
4.30	1,172	97	-53	368	2
4.35	1,163	101	-55	365	-1
4.40	1,155	105	-57	363	-5
4.45	1,146	108	-59	360	-8
4.50	1,137	112	-61	357	-12
4.55	1,128	116	-63	354	-16
4.60	1,120	120	-66	352	-20
4.65	1,111	123	-68	349	-23
4.70	1,102	127	-70	346	-27
4.75	1,093	131	-72	343	-31
4.80	1,085	135	-74	341	-35
4.85	1,076	138	-76	338	-38
4.90	1,067	142	-78	335	-42
4.95	1,058	146	-80	332	-46
5.00	1,050	150	-82	330	-50
5.05	1,041	153	-84	327	-53
5.10	1,032	157	-86	324	-57
5.15	1,023	161	-88	321	-61
5.20	1,015	165	-90	319	-65
5.25	1,006	168	-92	316	-68

Control (V)	Primary (uA)	Developing bias (V)	Pre-transfer (uA)	Transfer (uA)	Separation (uA)
5.30	997	172	-94	313	-72
5.35	938	176	-96	310	-76
5.40	980	180	-99	308	-80
5.45	971	183	-101	305	-83
5.50	962	187	-103	302	-87
5.55	953	191	-105	299	-91
5.60	945	195	-107	297	-95
5.65	936	198	-109	294	-98
5.70	927	202	-111	291	-102
5.75	918	206	-113	288	-106
5.80	910	210	-115	286	-110
5.85	901	213	-117	283	-113
5.90	892	217	-119	280	-117
5.95	883	221	-121	277	-121
6.00	875	225	-123	275	-125
6.05	866	228	-125	272	-128
6.10	857	232	-127	269	-132
6.15	848	236	-129	266	-136
6.20	840	240	-132	264	-140
6.25	831	243	-134	261	-143
6.30	822	247	-136	258	-147
6.35	813	251	-138	255	-151
6.40	805	255	-140	253	-155
6.45	796	258	-142	250	-158
6.50	787	262	-144	247	-162
6.55	778	266	-146	244	-166
6.60	770	270	-148	242	-170
6.65	761	273	-150	239	-173
6.70	752	277	-152	236	-177
6.75	743	281	-154	233	-181
6.80	735	285	-156	231	-185
6.85	726	288	-158	228	-188
6.90	717	292	-160	225	-192

Control (V)	Primary (uA)	Developing bias (V)	Pre-transfer (uA)	Transfer (uA)	Separation (uA)
6.95	708	296	-162	222	-196
7.00	700	300	-165	220	-200
7.05	691	303	-167	217	-203
7.10	682	307	-169	214	-207
7.15	673	311	-171	211	-211
7.20	665	315	-173	209	-215
7.25	656	318	-175	204	-218
7.30	647	322	-177	203	-222
7.35	638	326	-179	200	-226
7.40	630	330	-181	198	-230
7.45	621	333	-183	195	-233
7.50	612	337	-185	192	-237
7.55	603	341	-187	189	-241
7.60	595	345	-189	187	-245
7.65	586	348	-191	184	-248
7.70	577	352	-193	181	-252
7.75	568	356	-195	178	-256
7.80	560	360	-198	176	-260
7.85	551	363	-200	173	-263
7.90	542	367	-202	170	-267
7.95	533	371	-204	167	-271
8.00	525	375	-206	165	-275
8.05	516	378	-208	162	-278
8.10	507	382	-210	159	-282
8.15	498	386	-212	156	-286
8.20	490	390	-214	154	-290
8.25	481	393	-216	151	-293
8.30	472	397	-218	148	-297
8.35	463	401	-220	145	-301
8.40	455	405	-222	143	-305
8.45	446	408	-224	140	-308
8.50	437	412	-226	137	-312
8.55	428	416	-228	134	-316

Control (V)	Primary (uA)	Developing bias (V)	Pre-transfer (uA)	Transfer (uA)	Separation (uA)
8.60	420	420	-231	132	-320
8.65	411	423	-233	129	-323
8.70	402	427	-235	126	-327
8.75	393	431	-237	123	-331
8.80	385	435	-239	121	-335
8.85	376	438	-241	118	-338
8.90	367	442	-243	115	-342
8.95	358	446	-245	112	-346
9.00	350	450	-247	110	-350
9.05	341	453	-249	107	-353
9.10	332	457	-251	104	-357
9.15	323	461	-253	101	-361
9.20	315	465	-255	99	-365
9.25	306	468	-257	96	-368
9.30	297	472	-259	93	-372
9.35	288	476	-261	90	-376
9.40	280	480	-264	88	-380
9.45	271	483	-266	85	-383
9.50	262	487	-268	82	-387
9.55	253	491	-270	79	-391
9.60	245	495	-272	77	-395
9.65	236	498	-274	74	-398
9.70	227	502	-276	71	-402
9.75	218	506	-278	68	-406
9.80	210	510	-280	66	-410
9.85	201	513	-282	63	-413
9.90	192	517	-284	60	-417
9.95	183	521	-286	57	-421
10.00	175	525	-288	55	-425
10.05	166	528	-290	52	-428
10.10	157	532	-292	49	-432
10.15	148	536	-294	46	-436
10.20	140	540	-297	44	-440

Control (V)	Primary (uA)	Developing bias (V)	Pre-transfer (uA)	Transfer (uA)	Separation (uA)
10.25	131	543	-299	41	-443
10.30	122	547	-301	38	-447
10.35	113	551	-303	35	-451
10.40	105	555	-305	33	-455
10.45	96	558	-307	30	-458
10.50	87	562	-309	27	-462
10.55	78	566	-311	24	-466
10.60	70	570	-313	22	-470
10.65	61	573	-315	19	-473
10.70	52	577	-317	16	-477
10.75	43	581	-319	13	-481
10.80	35	585	-321	11	-485
10.85	26	588	-323	8	-488
10.90	17	592	-325	5	-492
10.95	8	596	-327	2	-496
11.00	0	600	-330	0	-500

2.1.8 Emergency Measures for a Fault in the Potential Sensor

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

If the potential sensor goes out of order and, as a result, a transfer separation fault occurs, use the following service mode item to avoid problems; be sure, however, that this is merely a tentative remedy to be used until the potential sensor is replaced:

1. COPIER>OPTION>TEMPO>F-POT-SW (Category 2)

Set '1' if a transfer separation fault occurs when the potential sensor has gone out of order.

2. COPIER>OPTION>TEMPO>F-POT-D (Category 2)

This is enabled when '1' is set for the foregoing service mode item.

0: if the user primarily uses originals with a low image ratio (text original). (default)

1: if the user primarily uses originals with a high image ratio (photo originals)

2: if re-transfer (drop-out about 50 mm of leading edge) occurs.

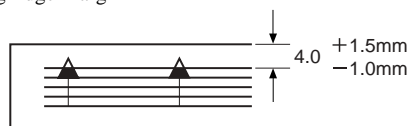
2.2 Image Adjustments

2.2.1 Standards of Image Position

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

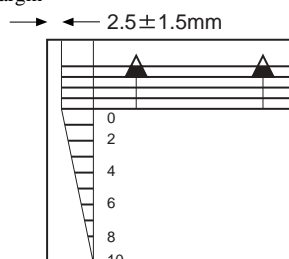
The image margin/non-image width of a print made in direct must be as follows:

image Leading Edge Margin



F-2-17

Left/Right Image Margin



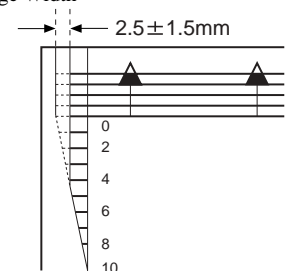
F-2-18

Leading Edge Non-Image Width



F-2-19

Left/Right Non-Image Width



F-2-20

2.2.2 Checking the Image Position

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Make prints using the following as the source of paper (10 prints each), and check to see that the image margin and the non-image width are as indicated:

- Each cassette
- Front deck (left, right)
- Manual feed tray
- Duplex feeding unit
- Side paper deck

If not as indicated, adjust the image position in the following order:

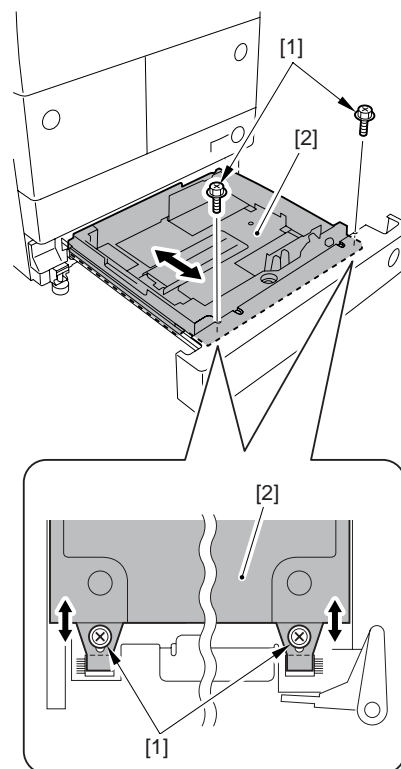
1. Adjusting the left/right image margin (registration)
2. Adjusting the image leading edge margin (registration)
3. Adjusting the left/right non-image width (CCD read start position)
4. Leading edge non-image width (scanner image leading edge position)

2.2.3 Adjusting Side Registration

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

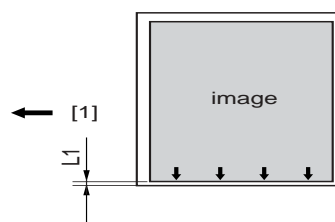
<Cassette 3/4>

- 1) Press the release button to draw out the cassette 3/4.
- 2) Loosen the 2 fixing screws [1] on both sides of the cassette.
- 3) Move the cassette body frontward or backward to adjust.
Backward: The side registration value (left margin) is decreased.
Forward: The side registration value (left margin) is increased.



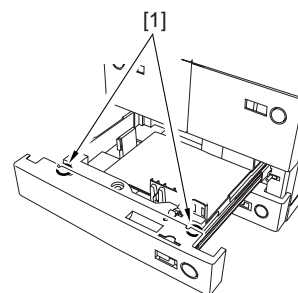
F-2-21

- 4) Make sure that the side registration values (left margins) of a copy made from the cassette 3/4 are $L1 = 2.5 \pm 1.5\text{mm}$ respectively.



F-2-22

- [1] Paper feed direction
- 5) Tighten back the 2 fixing screws [1] after the adjustment.

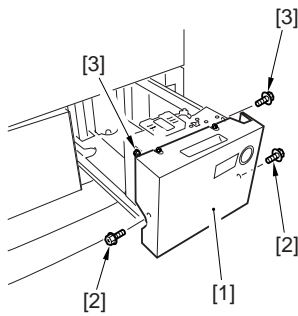


F-2-23

- 6) Put back the cassette 3/4 to the machine.
- 7) Perform the following service mode after the adjustment.
Cassette 3
COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > C3-STMTR/A4R
Use it to register the paper width basic value of the cassette 3.
1) Put STMTR/A4R paper in the cassette3, and adjust the slide guide plate to the width.
2) Select C3-STMTR/A4R to highlight, and press the OK key so that the machine executes auto adjustment and register the value.
Cassette 4
COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > C4-STMTR/A4R
This operation is similar to cassette 3.

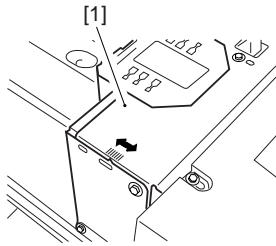
<Front Deck Left/Right>

- 1) Press the release button to draw out the front deck left/right.
- 2) Loosen the 2 screws [2] and 2 fixing screws [3] of the deck front cover [1].



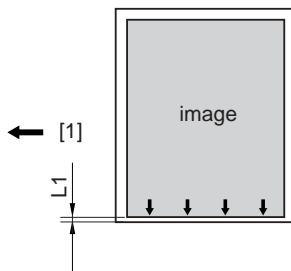
F-2-24

- 3) Move the cassette plate (front) [1] forward or backward to adjust.
 Backward: The side registration value (left margin) is decreased.
 Forward: The side registration value (left margin) is increased.



F-2-25

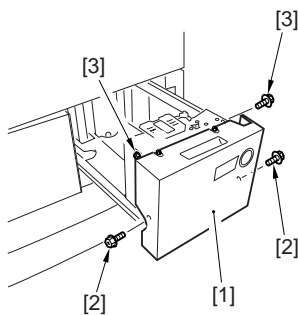
- 4) Make sure that the side registration values (left and right margins) of a copy made from the front deck left/right are $L1 = 2.5 \pm 1.5\text{mm}$ respectively.



F-2-26

[1] Paper feed direction

- 5) Tighten the 2 screws [2] and 2 fixing screws [3] of the deck front cover [1].

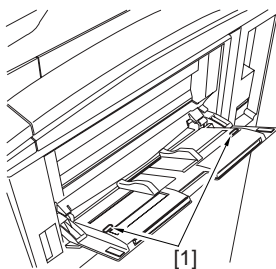


F-2-27

- 6) Put back the front deck left/right to the machine.

<Manual Feed Tray>

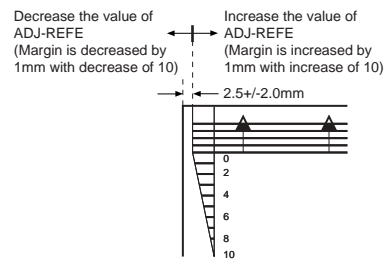
- 1) Move the side plates [1] to the center. Loosen the 2 mounting screws [2] of the manual feed tray, and adjust the position of the manual feed tray.



F-2-28

<Duplexing Feeder Unit>

- 1) Select the following service mode COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-REFE, and make an adjustment so that margin on the 2nd side image will be within specs.

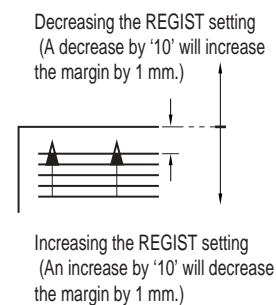


F-2-29

2.2.4 Adjusting the Image Leading Edge Margin

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Adjust the image margin in service mode so that it is as indicated: COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST.

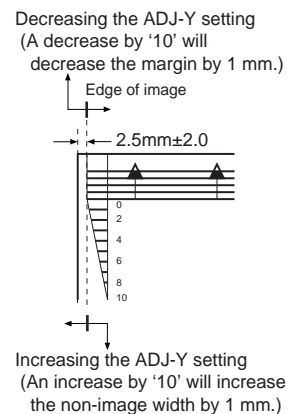


F-2-30

2.2.5 Adjusting the Left/Right Non-Image Width

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Adjust the non-image width in service mode so that it is as indicated: COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y.

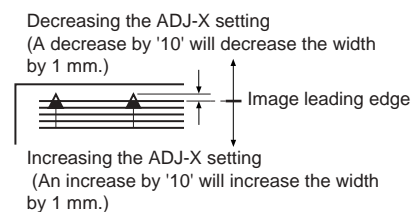


F-2-31

2.2.6 Adjusting the Leading Edge Non-Image Width

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Adjust the non-image width in service mode so that it is as indicated: COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X.



F-2-32

2.3 Scanning System

2.3.1 After Replacing the Reader Controller PCB

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



Be sure to generate the latest P-PRINT printout before replacing the reader controller PCB.

- If you are initializing the RAM on the reader controller without replacing the PCB

Using the SST, upload the backup data of R-CON; initialize the RAM, and then download the data, thus eliminating the need for the following.

- 1) Using the SST, download the latest system software (R-CON).
- 2) Make the following selections in the service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > R-CON. Then, press the OK key to execute RAM initialization. Thereafter, turn off and then back on the main power.
- 3) Enter the appropriate settings for the following items in the service mode:
 - a. setting indicated on the service label (found behind the reader unit front cover)
 - a-1. image read start position adjustment (X direction; in fixed reading mode)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-X
 - a-2. image read start position adjustment (Y direction; in fixed reading mode)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-Y
 - a-3. shading position adjustment (in fixed reading mode)
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-S
 - a-4. feeder mode main scanning position adjustment
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>ADJ-Y-DF
 - a-5. ADF stream reading CCD reading position
COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>STRD-POS
 - a-6. density manipulating value adjustment
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>DFCH-G2
COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>DFCH-G10
(After inputs it, execute COPIER>FUNCTION>DF-LNR)



The machine retains ADF-related service data in the RAM of its reader controller.

ADF adjustment is necessary whenever you have replaced the reader controller or initialized the RAM.

- b. original stop position adjustment (X direction) (stream reading)
FEEDER>ADJUST>DOCST
 - c. original feed speed (magnification) adjustment
FEEDER>ADJUST>LA-SPEED
- 4) Make adjustments using the following service mode items:
 - a. ADF sensor sensitivity adjustment
FEEDER>FUNCTION>SENS-INT
 - b. tray width adjustment
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-A4
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-A5R
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-LTR
FEEDER>FUNCTION>TRY-LTRR
 - c. white plate data adjustment
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>CCD-ADJ
 - d. ADF white level adjustment
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1
COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL2



Be sure to perform white plate data adjustment before performing ADF white level adjustment.

After having made the foregoing adjustments, put the P-PRINT printout in the service book case, replacing the previous P-PRINT printout.

2.3.2 When Replacing the CCD Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Perform the following steps after replacing the CCD unit.

- 1) Enter the correction values to be described on the label included in the CCD unit (the 2 following items) in the service mode.
 - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFCH2G2
 - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFCH2G10
- 2) Transcribe the above correction values to the service label at the back of the front cover of the host machine.
- 3) Execute the following in the service mode.
 - 3-1) White plate data adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CCD-ADJ)

3-2) ADF white level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/2)

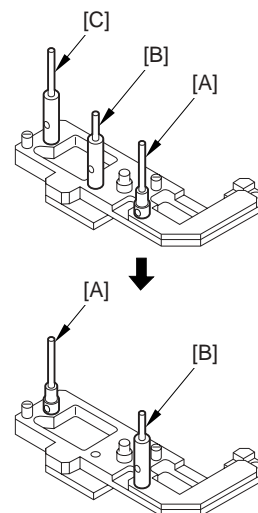


Be sure to perform white plate data adjustment before performing ADF white level plate.

2.3.3 Adjusting the Position of the No. 1/No. 2 Mirror Base

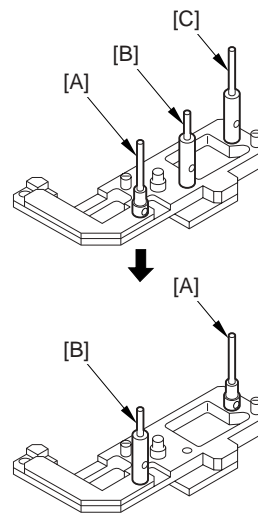
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Arrange the mirror positioning tool (FY9-3009-040) so that it is ready for use in the machine (by changing the pin position; REAR).



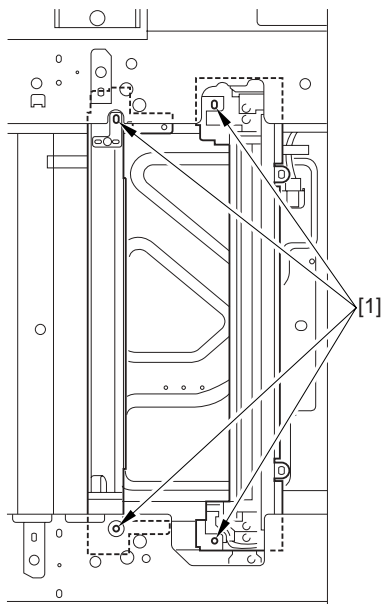
F-2-33

- 2) Arrange the mirror positioning tool so that it is ready for use in the machine (by changing the pin position; FRONT).

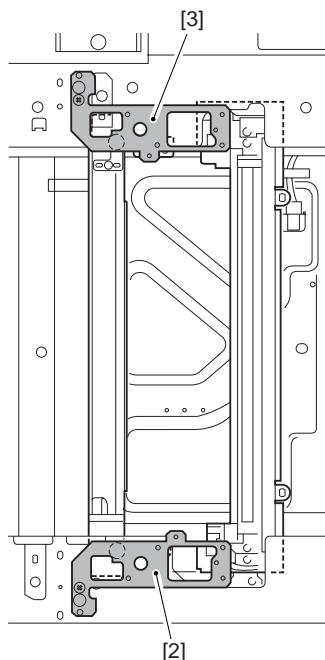


F-2-34

- 3) Fit the pins of the mirror positioning tool (front [2]; rear [3]) into the appropriate holes [1] of the No. 1/No. 2 mirror base.



F-2-35



F-2-36

- 4) Secure the end of the cable that has temporarily been fixed in place on the hook of the reader unit frame.
- 5) Fully tighten the screws on the cable fixing plate both at the front and the rear.
- 6) Detach the mirror positioning tool (FRONT, REAR).
- 7) Put the detached parts back on by reversing the foregoing steps.

2.3.4 When Replacing the Copyboard Glass

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Execute the following in the service mode:

- 1) White plate data adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CCD-ADJ)
- 2) ADF white level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/2)



Be sure to perform white plate data adjustment before performing ADF white level adjustment.

2.3.5 When Replacing the Reading Glass

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Execute the following in service mode:

- 1) ADF white level adjustment (COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/2).

2.3.6 When Replacing the Scanning Lamp

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Execute the following in the service mode:

- 1) White plate data adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CCD-ADJ)
- 2) ADF white level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/2)



Be sure to perform white plate data adjustment before performing ADF white level adjustment.

2.3.7 After Replacing the Inverter PCB

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Execute the following in the service mode:

- 1) White plate data adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CCD-ADJ).
- 2) ADF white level adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1/2).



Be sure to perform white plate data adjustment before performing ADF white level plate.

2.4 Laser Exposure System

2.4.1 When Replacing the Scanner Unit

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

If the temperature of the fixing assembly is 150 deg C or higher when the main power switch is turned on, the machine will not execute potential control. If such is the case after replacing the scanner unit, manually execute potential control in service mode as follows:

- 1) Make the following selections in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>DPC>DPC; then, enter '1', and press [OK].
- 2) Turn off and then back on the main power switch.

2.5 Image Formation System

2.5.1 Outline

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The photosensitive drum is surrounded by 3 charging wires; the primary charging wire, the pre-transfer charging wire, and the transfer/separation charging wire.

These charging wires are newly adopted brown wires (0.06 mm in diameter). Do not use a gold-plated wire that has been used in the past; otherwise, image fault may occur.

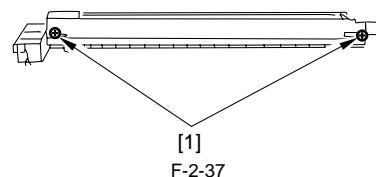
Further, be sure to use a strengthened polishing pad (in a blue holder) as the cleaning pad for the primary charging assembly and the transfer charging assembly.

2.5.2 Routing Charging Wire

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

All charging wires (except the grid wire) are routed more or less in the same way; the following cites the primary charging assembly.

- 1) Remove the shield plates (left, right) of the charging assembly. To prevent deformation (deflection) in the primary charging assembly, be sure to work separately for the left shielding plate and the right shielding plate (do not loosen the screws [1] of both shielding plates at the same time.)
- 2) Remove the wire cleaner.



F-2-37



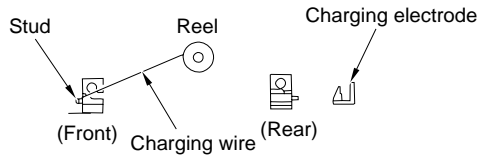
For other charging assemblies, remove the 2 covers.

- 3) Free a length of about 5 cm of the charging wire (0.06 mm in diameter) from the charging wire reel, and form a loop at its end with a diameter of about 2 mm.

MEMO:

To form a loop, wind the charging wire around a hex key once, and turn the hex key 3 to 4 times; then, twist the charging wire.

- 4) Cut the end (excess) of the twisted wire.
5) Hook the loop on the stud.



F-2-38

- 6) At the rear, hook the charging wire on the charging wire positioning plate; then, hook the charging wire tension spring on the charging wire where indicated to the following figure.

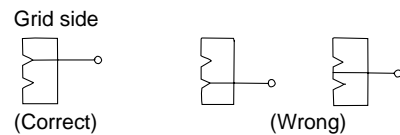
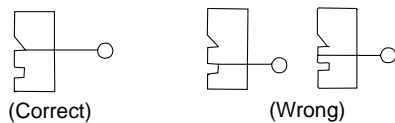


F-2-39

- 7) Cut off the excess of the charging wire with nippers.
8) Pick the end of the charging wire tension spring with tweezers, and hook it on the charging power supply electrode. In the case of the pre-transfer charging assembly, hook the spring on the pin at the front.



F-2-40



F-2-41



Make sure the followings:

- The charging wire must not be bent or twisted.
- The charging wire must be fitted in the V-groove of the charging wire positioning plate.

- 9) Attach a cushion in front of the charging wire (except the primary charging assembly).
10) Attach the shield plates (left, right).



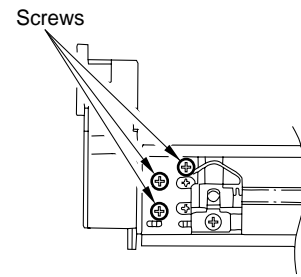
For other charging assemblies, attach the 2 covers.

- 11) Attach the wire cleaner. At this time, make sure the orientation of the wire cleaner.
12) Wipe the charging wire with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solutions.

2.5.3 Routing Grid for Primary Charging Assembly

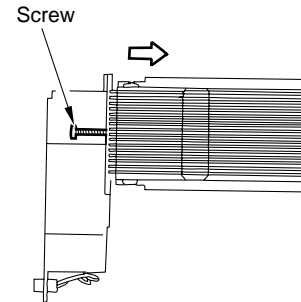
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Loosen the 2 screws used to secure the left and right shielding plates in place.
2) Loosen the 3 screws used to secure the motor unit at the front in place.



F-2-42

- 3) Loosen the screw, and move it in the direction of the arrow indicated below; then, temporarily tighten it in place.
4) Free a length of about 5 cm of the charging wire (0.1 mm in diameter) from the charging wire reel, and form a loop at its end with a diameter of about 2 mm.

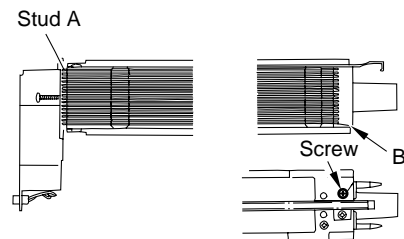


F-2-43

MEMO:

To form a loop, wind the charging wire around a hex key once, and turn the hex key 3 to 4 times; then, twist the charging wire.

- 5) Cut the twisted charging wire (excess) with nippers.
6) Hook the loop on the stud A.
7) After routing the wire for 31 runs, lead it through the section B, and give it a half turn; then, put it between the washer and the monitor unit, and wind it once around the screw (clockwise), and secure it in place with the screw.



F-2-44

- 8) Cut the excess of the charging wire with nippers.
9) Tighten the screw loosened in the step 3.
Keep tightening until the tension of the grid wire is even. Be sure to pay attention to avoid deformation (deflection) of the charging assembly (as by tightening the screw at the front of the left/right shielding plate early).
10) Tighten the screws loosened in the step 1 and 2.
11) Wipe the grid wire with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solutions.



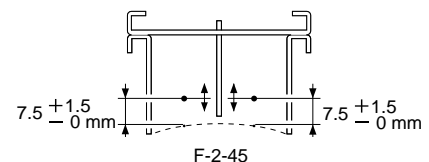
Make sure the followings:

- The grid wire must not be bent or twisted.
- The wires are laid at equal intervals. (The grid wire must be fitted in the groove of the block.)

2.5.4 Adjusting Height of Charging Wire

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- [1] Primary charging wire

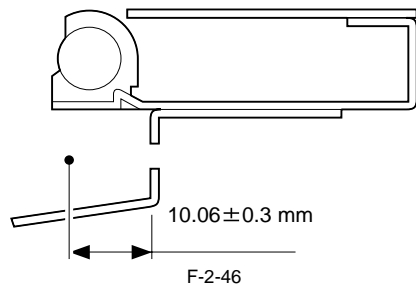


F-2-45

Height of the charging wire

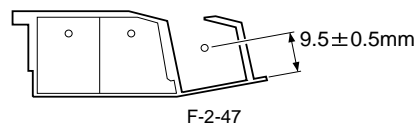
<Tolerance> ± 1 mm

[2] Pre-transfer charging wire



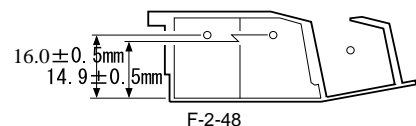
Height of the charging wire
<Tolerance> No height adjusting mechanism

[3] Transfer charging wire



Height of the charging wire
<Tolerance> ± 2 mm

[4] Separation charging wire



Height of the charging wire
<Tolerance> ± 2 mm

MEMO:

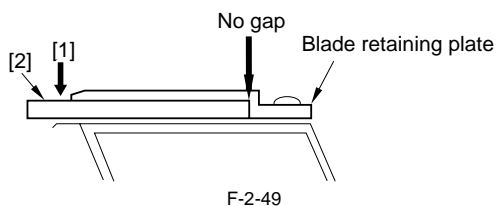
The height (position) of the primary charging wire and the transfer charging wire can be adjusted by turning the screw at the back of the charging assembly. A single turn changes the position of the charging wire by about 0.7 mm.

2.5.5 Mounting Cleaning Blade

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

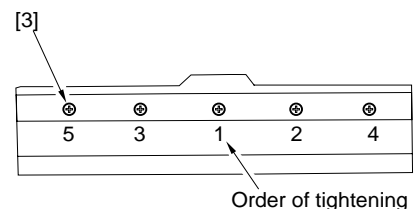
When mounting the cleaning blade, be sure that the side with the marking [1] will be the face.

1) Push in the cleaning blade [2] until it butts slightly against the rear.



2) Tighten the 5 screws [3] lightly, and stop to turn them when resistance is felt.

3) Turn the screws tightened lightly in the step 2 about 20 to 30 degrees in the order indicated below, and tighten them fully.



F-2-50



After mounting the cleaning blade, check that the edge of the blade is not extremely bent.

Further, be sure to clean the groove in the blade support plate before mounting the blade, as toner or the like in the groove can be the cause the bending of the blade. AB

2.5.6 Removing Side Seal

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

1) Remove the old side seal.

2) Mount the new side seal [1] to the cleaner housing where indicated (both ends).

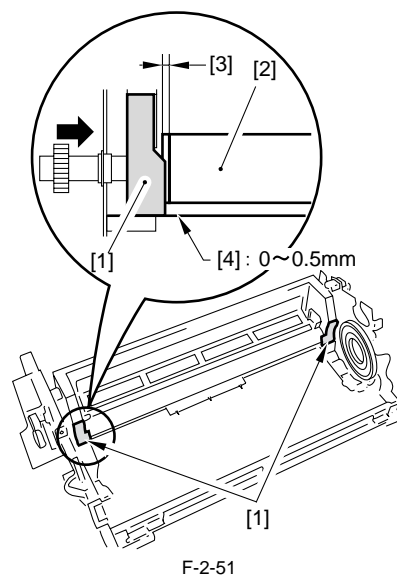
At this time, be sure that the edge of the side seal is positioned as follow:

- When replacing the side seal [1] at the front, push the magnet roller [2] toward the rear, and then, make sure that the inner end of the side seal is within the area [3] of the washer.

- When replacing the side seal [1] at the rear, push the magnet roller [2] toward the front, and then, make sure that the inner end of the side seal is within the area [3] of the washer.

3) The bottom end of each side seal [1] must be 0 to 0.5 mm from the corner of the cleaner housing; i.e., point of reference [4].

4) Attach the side seal [1] at the front and the rear to the cleaner housing while making sure its position is as indicated.



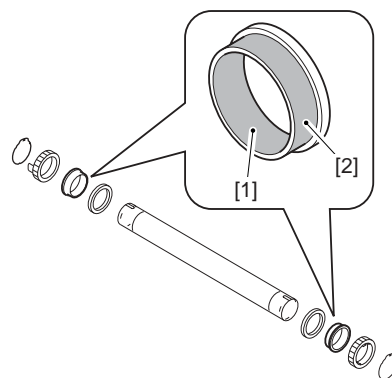
F-2-51

2.6 Fixing System

2.6.1 Applying Grease After Replacing the Fixing Roller

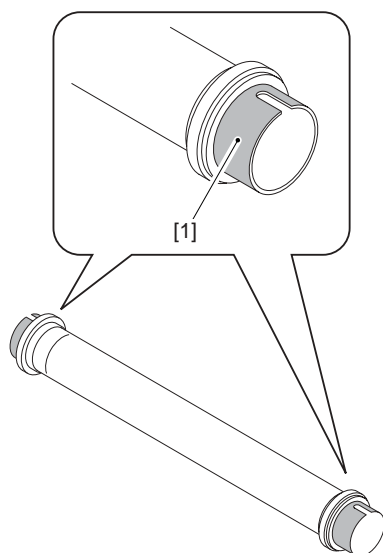
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- About 20mg of grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) should be applied to the inner [1] and the outer surfaces [2] of the bushing until the white coat covering is formed uniformly. If this undone, the noise (squeaking) may occur.



F-2-52

- Applied grease may be transferred from the bushing to the fixing roller ends [1] when mounting; be sure to wipe it off when this happens.



F-2-53

2.6.2 Adjusting the Nip Width

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

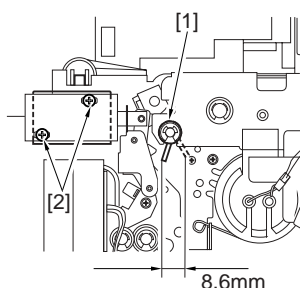
The nip width adjustment is not necessary.

2.6.3 Adjusting the Fixing Web Solenoid (SL9)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

a. For New Fixing Webs

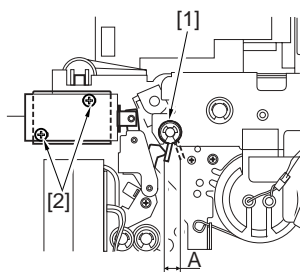
Adjust the solenoid position with the screw [2] so that the drive lever [1] can shift up to 8.6mm.



F-2-54

b. For Used Fixing Webs

Before removing the solenoid, check the position (A) of the drive lever [1] when the solenoid is turned on. After replacing the solenoid, adjust the drive lever [1] position with the screw [2] so that it positions as it did before replacement.



F-2-55

2.6.4 After Replacing the Fixing Web

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

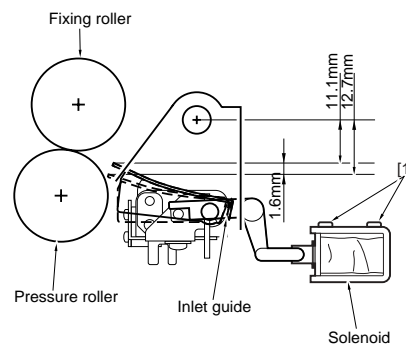
After replacing the fixing web, be sure to reset the counter reading to '0' by using the following service mode items.

COPIER> COUNTER> MISC> FIX-WEB
COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> FX-WEB

2.6.5 Adjusting the Fixing Inlet Guide Solenoid (SL1)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Adjust the position of the fixing inlet guide solenoid with the screw [1] so that the guide positions as shown in the figure below when the solenoid is turned on.

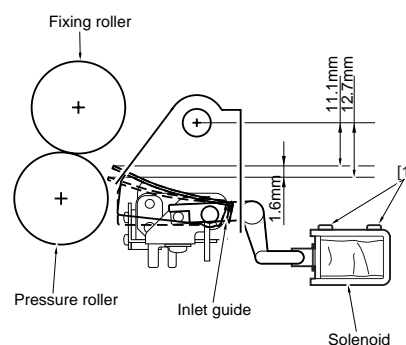


F-2-56

2.6.6 Adjusting the Position of the Fixing Inlet Guide

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Adjust the position of the solenoid using the two screws [1] so that the fixing inlet guide will be positioned as indicated when the solenoid turns on.



F-2-57

<Points to Note When Making Adjustments in the Field>

- The inlet guide is in low position when the solenoid (SL1) goes on.
- The height of the inlet guide must be such that the difference between the front and the rear must be 0.2 mm or less.
- As necessary, adjust the height of the inlet guide by loosening the fixing screw on the height adjusting support plate.

2.7 Electrical Components

2.7.1 When Replacing DC Controller PCB

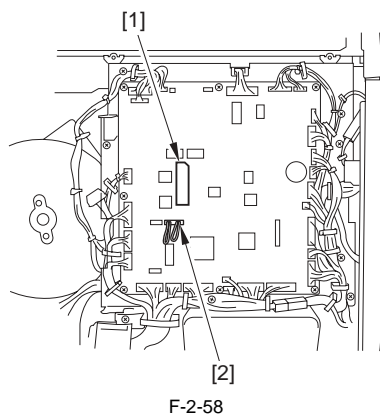
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Be sure to perform the followings when replacing the DC controller PCB.

- 1) Enter the latest values for the service mode indicated on the label [1] on the back of the front cover with the service mode.
- 2) Enter the values indicated on the label [1] of the new PCB using the following service mode items:
COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> D-PRE-TR
COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> D-HV-TR
COPIER> ADJUST> HV-SP> D-HV-SP
COPIER> ADJUST> DEVELOP> D-HV-DE
- 3) Move the J303 shorting connector [2] on the PCB from the existing to the new PCB.



Make sure to connect the shorting connector. Otherwise, E004 occurs.



F-2-58

2.7.2 When Replacing HVT PCB

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Enter the values indicated on the label of the HVT PCB using the following service mode items:

```
COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>H-PRE-TR
COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>HVT-TR
COPIER>ADJUST>HV-SP>HVT-SP
COPIER>ADJUST>DEVELOP>HVT-DE
```

2.7.3 After Replacing the HDD

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- Formatting the HDD

Start up the machine in the safe mode (i.e., while holding down the 2 and 8 keys, turn on the main power).

Using the HD format function of the SST, format all partitions (BOOTDEV/PDLDEV/FSTDEV/FSTCDEV/TMP_GEN/TMP_FAX/TMP_PSS/IMG_MNG/APL_MEAP/APL_GEN/APL_SEND). (For details, see the descriptions given for upgrading.)

- Downloading the system software

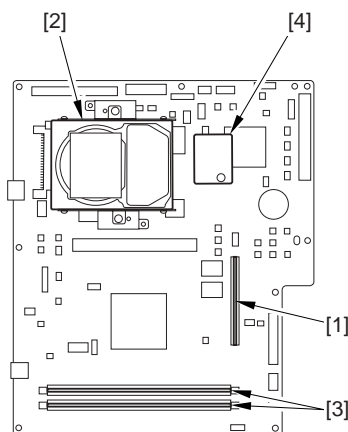
Using the SST, download the following: System, Language, RUI, MEAP-CONT (Meap content), SDICT (OCR dictionary), KEY (key/certificate for encrypted communication), TTS (audio dictionary).

2.7.4 When Replacing the Main Controller PCB

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Upload each setting/registration data stored in SRAM of the main controller PCB onto the PC by using SST. See the chapter 'Version Upgrading' for its operation procedure.

If you are replacing the main controller PCB, be sure to transfer the following components from the old to new PCB.



F-2-59

- [1] Boot ROM
- [2] Hard disk
- [3] Image memory (SDRAM)
- [4] Counter memory PCB

2.8 Pickup/Feeding System

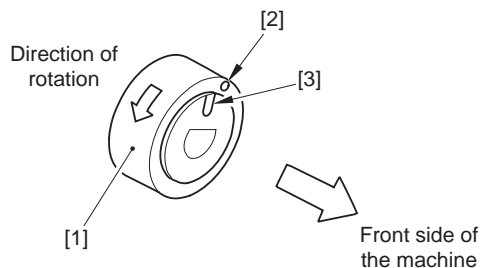
2.8.1 Points to Note When Mounting the Pickup Roller

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

⚠ The direction of the mounting pickup roller

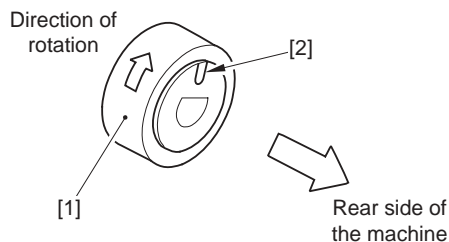
The pickup roller may be mounted by reversing the steps used to remove it; however, be sure to keep the following in the mind.

- The roller used at the front and the rear of the machine is not compatible.
- When mounting the pickup roller used at the front of the machine [1], make sure the round mark [2] and the punch mark [3] found on the side of the roller are toward the front of the machine.



F-2-60

- When mounting the pickup roller used at the rear of the machine [1], make sure the punch mark [2] is at the rear of the machine.



F-2-61

2.8.2 Points to Note When Mounting the Separation Roller

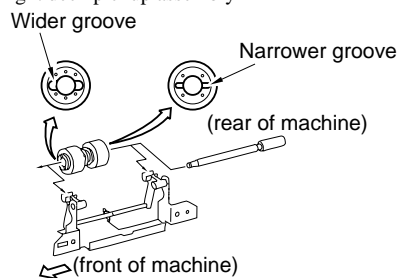
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

When replacing the separation roller, be sure it is oriented as follows.



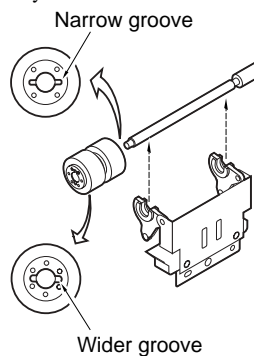
Mounting the separation roller in a wrong orientation may lead to interference against the crimping washer. Make sure it is mounted in a correct orientation.

Cassette 1/2, Right deck pickup assembly



F-2-62

Left deck pickup assembly



F-2-63

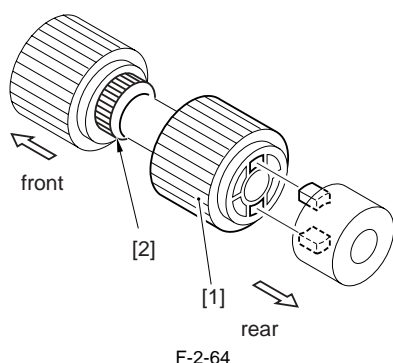
2.8.3 The Points to Mount the Feeding Roller

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

When mounting the feeding roller [1] to the cassette pickup assembly, make sure the belt pulley [2] is at the front of the machine.



Check to make sure the protrusion in the roller plate and roller are engaged securely.



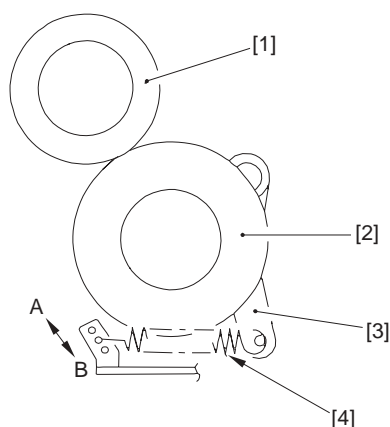
F-2-64

2.8.4 Adjusting the Pressure of the Deck/Cassette Separation Roller

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

When picking up, if double feeding or pickup failure occurs, adjust the position of the pressure spring in the separation roller.

- If double feeding occurs, move the hook of the spring in the direction of B.
- If pickup failure occurs, move the hook of the spring in the direction of A.



F-2-65

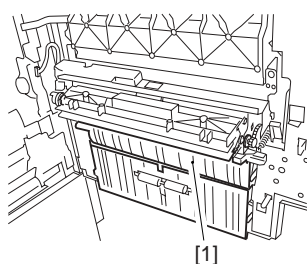
- [1] Feeding roller
- [2] Separation roller
- [3] Pressure lever
- [4] Pressure spring

2.8.5 Adjusting the Pressure of the Manual Separation Roller

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

When picking up, if double feeding or failure occurs, adjust the position of the pressure spring of the separation roller.

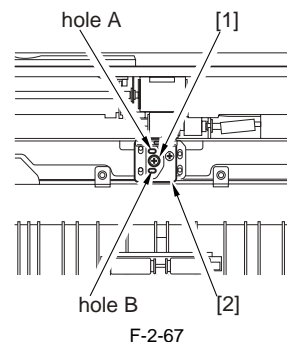
- 1) Detach the right cover (upper).
- 2) Remove the upper guide [1].



F-2-66

- 3) Move the mount [3] to adjust the position of the pressure spring of the separation roller.
 - If double feeding occurs, remove the mounting screw [2], lower the

mounting base [3] and tighten the screw [2] in the A hole.
 - If pickup failure occurs, remove the mounting screw [2], raise the mounting base [3] and tighten the screw [2] in the B hole.

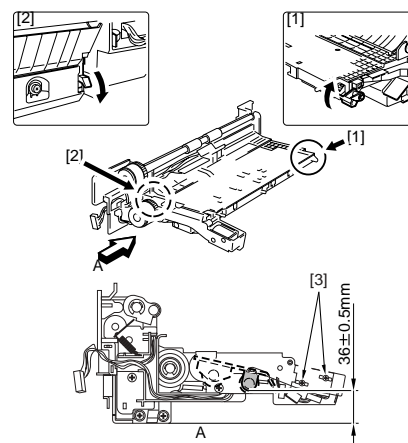


F-2-67

2.8.6 Adjusting the Position of the Pickup Solenoid (SL3, SL4) of the Cassette 3/4

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Adjust the position of the solenoid using the two screws [3] so that the distance from the bottom of the pickup assembly to A of the roller arm is 36 ± 0.5 mm when [1] and [2] are op-er-ated.

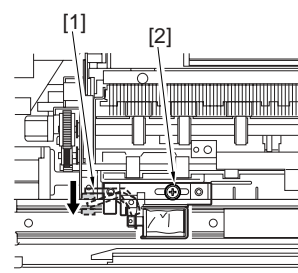


F-2-68

2.8.7 Adjusting the Position of the Delivery Flapper Solenoid (SL5)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Adjust the position of the mounting screw [2] using the screw [2] so that the drive lever [1] is pushed fully when the solenoid turns on (i.e., when the plunger is drawn).

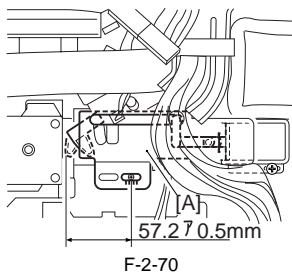


F-2-69

2.8.8 Adjusting the Position of the Right Deck Pickup Solenoid (SL6)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Adjust the position of the solenoid so that the left edge of the arm 2 is 57.2 ± 0.5 mm from the center of hole A of the solenoid mounting base.

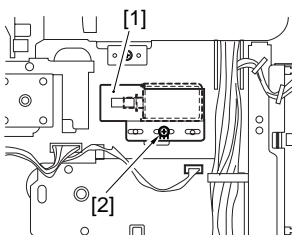


F-2-70

2.8.9 Adjusting the Position of the Left Deck Pickup Solenoid

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Before removing the left deck pickup solenoid from the support plate [1], take note of its position with reference to the fixing screw [2] of the solenoid. Or, mark the position for the solenoid by drawing a line on the support plate with a scribe. When mounting the solenoid on its own, be sure to secure it in its original position.



F-2-71

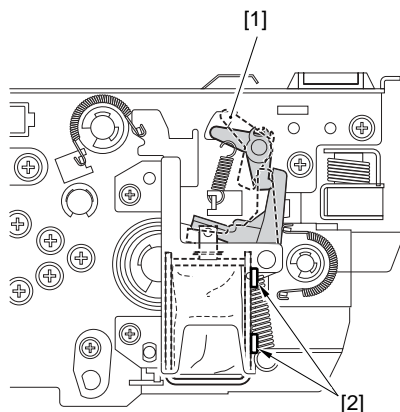
2.8.10 Mounting the Reversing Flapper Solenoid

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



Before removing the screw, make sure to mark the line in the following step.

- 1) Adjust the position of the solenoid using the 2 screws [1] so that the driver lever [2] is pushed fully when the solenoid is on (i.e., when the plunger is down)

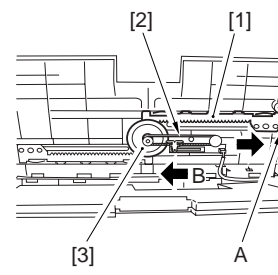


F-2-72

2.8.11 Attaching the Side Guide Timing Belt in the Manual Feed Tray Assembly

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Butt the rack plate [1] of the manual feed tray against section A (open state).
- 2) Move the slide volume in the direction of B, and attach the timing belt [2] onto the pulley [3].

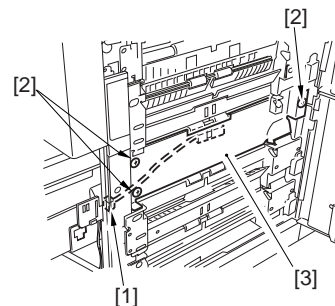


F-2-73

2.8.12 Adjusting the Position of the Lifter Motor M20/M21 of the Cassette 3/4

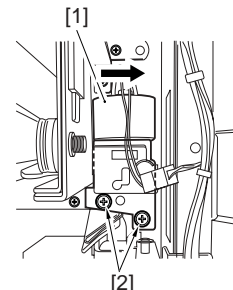
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

- 1) Remove the cable from the wire saddle, and detach the guide plate [3].
 - 1 connector [1]
 - 3 screws [2]



F-2-74

- 2) While keeping the lifter motor M21/M21 [1] to the right side, tighten the screw [2] temporally.



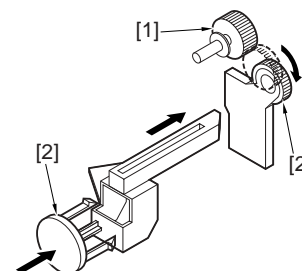
F-2-75

- 3) Set the cassette 3/4 in the machine without paper.
- 4) Check to make sure the lifer drive guar [1] is engaged with the lifter motor guar [2] from the right side of the machine.
- 5) Check to make sure the lifter drive guar is fully away from the lifter motor guar when the release button of the cassette 3/4 [3] is pressed halfway.



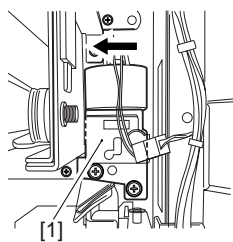
The condition of "pressing released button halfway" is following.

- Separation roller should move down.
- The cassette roller is about to slide out.



F-2-76

- 6) If the lifter drive guar is not away from the lifter motor, move the position of the lifter motor M20/M21 [1] to the left and check again with keeping the release button of the cassette 3/4 pressed halfway.



F-2-77

- 7) Fully tighten the 2 screws of the lifter motor M20/M21.
- 8) Mount back the removed parts and turn the machine on.
- 9) Check to make sure the cassette can be fully slid out when the cassette release button is pressed under the following conditions.
 - The cassette contains no paper
 - The cassette contains about 550 paper

Chapter 3 Error Code

3.1 Error Code Details

3.1.1 Detail Error Code

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-1

Code	Description	Remedy
E000	The heater fails to heat. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0000	After power-on, the reading of the main thermistor does not increase to 70 deg C or higher within 20 sec.	- Replace the main/shutter thermistor. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0010	The power has been turned off and then on without resetting the error.	- Reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)
E001	There is an abnormal rise in temperature. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0001	There is an error or an open circuit in the main thermistor, shutter thermistor, or sub thermistor.	- Check the connector of each thermistor for any fault in connection and wiring. - Replace the thermistor in question. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0002	The reading of the main thermistor, shutter thermistor, or sub thermistor is 230 deg C or higher for 2 sec.	- Replace the thermistor in question. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0003	The reading is not 150 deg C or higher or 210 deg C or lower within 30 sec.	- Check the connecting of the main/ sub/ shutter thermistors. - Check the mounting of the main/ sub/ shutter thermistors. - Exchange the main/ sub/ shutter thermistors. - Exchange the DC controller PCB.
0010	The power has been turned off and then back on without resetting the error.	- Reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)
E002	There is an abnormal rise in temperature. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0000	The reading of the main thermistor is not 100 deg C 12 sec after it has exceeded 70 deg C.	- Check the connector of the main/shutter thermistor for any fault in connection and wiring. - Check the main/shutter thermistor for mounting condition. - Replace the main/shutter thermistor. - Replace the fixing heater unit. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0001	The reading of the main thermistor is not 150 deg C 15 sec after it has exceeded 100 deg C.	
0010	The power has been turned off and then back on without resetting the error.	- Reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)
E003	There is an abnormal rise in temperature. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0000	The reading of the main thermistor is lower than 70 deg C for 2 sec or more after it has exceeded 100 deg C.	- Check the connector of the main/shutter thermistor for any fault in connection and wiring. - Check the main/shutter thermistor for mounting condition. - Replace the main/shutter thermistor. - Replace the fixing heater unit. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0010	The power has been turned off and then back on without resetting the error.	- Reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)
E004	The IH power supply is faulty/the IH control mechanism is faulty. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0010	The power has been turned off and then back on without resetting the error.	- Reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)
0101	There is a mismatch between the input voltage and the IH power supply ID.	Replace the fixing heater power supply with one designed for the country of installation (voltage).

Code	Description	Remedy
0102	The IH current is faulty. (current leakage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the fixing heater power supply.- Replace the DC controller PCB.
0103	The IH current is faulty. (no current)	
0104	There is an IH over-current.	
0105	The IH input voltage is too high.	
0106	The IH input voltage is too low.	
0201	At power-on (or, when IH is at reset), the IH control mechanism is not in an initial state.	
0202	At IH start-up, the IH control enable flag is not set within 1 sec after the start flag is set.	
0203	With IH at rest, the IH control flag is not released.	
0204	The 12-V power supply (IH relay) is identified as being off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Replace the DC controller PCB.
0205	At IH start-up, the PWM/ON data is faulty ('0' or 'FFFF')	
E005	There is no fixing web/there is an error in the detection of web solenoid connection.	
0000	The absence of the fixing web has been detected for 5 sec or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Replace the fixing web.- Replace the fixing web length sensor.- Replace the DC controller PCB. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the fixing web counter reading. (COPIER>COUNTER>MISC>FIX-WEB)
0001	At power-on, the connection of the web solenoid is not detected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the solenoid.
0010	The power has been turned off and then back on without resetting the error.	- Reset the fixing web counter. (COPIER>COUNTER>MISC>FIX-WEB)
E010	There is a feed motor error.	
0000	The FG signal of the feed motor does not arrive for 2 sec or more even when the feed motor has been turned on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the motor
E012	There is a drum motor error.	
0000	The FG signal of the drum motor does snot arrive for 2 sec or more even when the drum motor has been turned on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the motor.
E013	The waste toner pipe is clogged.	
0000	The waste toner pipe is identified as being clogged for 4 sec or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the waste toner feedscrew lock detecting switch.- Replace the waste toner feed unit.- Replace the DC controller PCB.
0010	The power has been turned off and then back on without resetting the error.	
E014	There is a fixing motor error.	
0000	The Phase lock signal of the fixing motor does not arrive for 2 sec even when the fixing motor has been turned on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the motor.
E020	There is no toner in the developing assembly; there is an error in the detection of developing toner sensor connection; there is an error in the detection of hopper toner sensor connection	
0000	The presence of toner is detected inside the sub hopper and, in addition, the absence of toner is detected inside developing assembly for 120 sec continuously even when operation has been under way for the supply of toner to the developing assembly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector of the developing toner sensor for any fault in connection.- Replace the developing toner sensor.- Replace the hopper toner sensor.
0001	At power-on, the connection of the developing assembly toner sensor is not detected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the sensor.
0002	At power-on, the connection of the developing hopper toner sensor is not detected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Check the connector for any fault in connection.- Replace the sensor.
E025	There is a toner feed motor over-current detection error, there is a toner bottle motor connection detection error.	

Code	Description	Remedy
0001	An over-current has been detected in the toner feed motor.	- Check the connector for any fault in connection. - Replace the motor.
0002	An over-current has been detected in the toner bottle motor.	- Check the connector for any fault in connection. - Replace the motor.
0003	At power-on, the connection of the toner bottle motor is not detected.	- Check the connector for any fault in connection. - Replace the motor.
E032	The NE controller counter has malfunctioned.	
0001	An open circuit has been detected for the count pulse signal.	Turn off the main power, and check for an open circuit in the cable; then, turn the main power back on.
E061	There is a potential control error/there is an APC error.	
0001	As a result of potential control, the drum surface potential (VL2) of the background is 200 V or higher (i.e., causing a solid black image).	- Replace the potential sensor unit. - Replace the laser scanner unit. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0002	The primary charging output used at time of printer output and the drum surface potential after laser output is identified as being 200 V or more (i.e., causing a solid black image).	
E100	There is a BD error.	
0001	A check is made of VLOCK at intervals of 100 msec while the laser is on. An error will be identified if it is not detected 10 times in sequence.	- Replace the laser scanner unit. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
E102	There is a laser verify error.	
0001	The machine model ID that has been read from the laser scanner EEPROM is not correct.	
E110	There is a polygon motor error.	
0001	- Although the polygon motor has been turned on, VLOCK is not detected at all within 76.5 sec. - At time of a shift from full-speed to half-speed control, VLOCK is not detected at all for 7.5 sec. - At time of half-speed control, a check is made of VLOCK at intervals of 100 msec. An error will be identified if it is not detected 10 times continuously.	- Replace the laser scanner unit. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
E121	There is a controller cooling fan error.	
0001	Even though the controller cooling fan has been turned on, the controller cooling fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec or more.	- Check the connector for any fault in connection. - Replace the fan.
E193	There is a gate array error.	
0001	The add-on through setting of the IMG1 cannot correctly be done (it is not correctly set 10 continuous times)	
E196	The EEPROM is faulty.	
1abb	There is a mismatch between the data that has been written in EEPROM and the data that has been read. (a: chip No. 0 through 5; bb: chip faulty address)	- Initialize the RAM. - Replace the EEPROM. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
2abb	The ID in EEPROM that has been read and the ID in ROM are compared. An error will be identified if they do not match. (a: chip No. 0 through 5; bb: chip faulty address)	
3abb	When the main power is turned on, the ID in EEPROM and the ID in ROM are compared. An error will be identified if they do not match. (a: chip No. 0 through 5; bb: chip faulty address)	- Check the position and condition of the EEPROM. - Initialize the RAM. - Replace the EEPROM. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
E197	There is an error in communication between the DC controller PCB and the video PCB/an error in communication of the DC controller PCB.	

Code	Description	Remedy
0000	An error in the communication between the DC controller PCB and the video PCB has occurred.	
0001	An error in the communication with the laser driver module of the DC controller PCB has occurred.	
E225	Error in CIS Unit (DADF)	
1010	- The error is cleared by turning off/on the power switch. This triggers function-restricted mode. - CIS unit suspends its functions; only CCD unit performs duplexing reading. - Functions will be automatically restored by replacing CIS unit.	
E240	The communication between the main controller PCB and the DC controller PCB is faulty.	
0000	There is an error in the communication between the main controller PCB and the CPU of the DC controller PCB.	- Check the connector for any fault in connection. - Replace the DC controller PCB. - Replace the main controller PCB.
E315	There is a fault in the image data.	
0007	There is a JIBIG encode error.	- Turn off and then back on the power.
000d	There is a JBIG decode error.	
0200	CRC error detected in OpenI/F (image transfer from the external controller); retried but failed to restore.	- Replace the external controller connection PCB
0300	Cubic timeout	- Turn off/on the power switch. Replace the PCB for frequent error occurrence.
0400	Shift device A timeout	
0401	Shift device B timeout	
E503	There is an error in the finisher internal communication (finisher).	
0002	There is an error in the communication between the finisher and the saddle unit.	- Check the connection between the saddle stitcher controller PCB and the finisher controller PCB.
0003	There is an error in the communication between the finisher and the punch unit.	- Check the communication between the saddle stitcher controller PCB and the finisher controller PCB.
E505	There is a finisher backup memory error (finisher).	
0001	An error has occurred in the data stored in the backup memory.	- Turn off the main power; check the DC controller PCB and the finisher controller PCB for wiring; check the 24-V system fuse; then, turn the main power back on.
0002	There is an error in the punch unit EEPROM data.	- Turn off the main power; check the DC controller PCB and the puncher controller PCB for wiring; then, check the 24-V system fuse; then, turn the main power back on.
E514	There is a trailing edge assist motor error (finisher).	
8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the trailing edge assist motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the trailing edge assist home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the trailing edge assist motor. Is it normal? 3. Check the trailing edge assist mechanism. Is there a fault? 4. Try replacing the trailing edge assist motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the trailing edge assist motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E519	There is a gear change motor error (finisher).	

Code	Description	Remedy
8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the gear change motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the gear change home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the change motor. Is it normal? 3. Check the gear change mechanism. Is there a fault? 4. Try changing the gear change motor. Is the problem corrected?
0002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the gear change motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E530	There is a front alignment error. (finisher)	
8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the front alignment motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the aligning plate home position sensor. Is it normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the aligning plate front motor. Is it normal? 3. Is there any mechanical obstacle in the path in which the aligning plate moves? 4. Try replacing the aligning plate front motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the front alignment motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E531	There is a stapling error. (finisher)	
0001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the stapler motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stapler. Is it normal? 2. Try replacing the stapler. Is the problem corrected?
0002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the stapler motor has rotated for a specific period time.	
E532	There is a stapler shift error. (finisher)	
8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the stapler shift motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the stapler shift home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stapler shift motor. Is it normal? 3. Is there any mechanical obstacle in the path of the stapler shift base? 4. Try replacing the stapler shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the stapler shift motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E535	There is a swing error. (finisher)	

Code	Description	Remedy
8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the swing home position sensor. Is it normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the swing motor. Is it normal? 3. Is there a fault in the swing mechanism? 4. Try replacing the swing motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E537	There is a rear alignment error. (finisher)	
8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	1. Check the aligning plate rear home position sensor. Is it normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the aligning plate rear motor. Is it normal? 3. Is there a mechanical obstacle in the path of the aligning plate? 4. Try replacing the aligning plate rear motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time.	
E540	There is an upper tray ascent/descent error. (finisher)	
8001	- If the tray does not return to home position when the tray 1 shift motor is driven for 20 seconds. - If the tray does not move to other area when tray 1 shift motor is driven for 4 seconds.	1. Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are they normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is it normal? 3. Is there a fault in the tray ascent/descent mechanism? 4. Try replacing the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	- The dangerous area is reached before the tray 1 paper surface sensor detects paper surface during the paper surface detection operation. - A discontinuous area is detected during tray operation.	
8003	The tray 1 closing detect switch is activated while the tray 1 is operating.	
8004	Clock signal input cannot be detected when the tray 1 shift motor has been driven for 0.2 second.	
8005	The lock detection signal turns OFF 150 ms after the lock detection signal turned ON.	
8006	The lock detection signal does not turn ON when the tray 1 shift motor has been driven for 1 second.	
8007	The lock detection signal does not turn OFF when the tray 1 shift motor is at a stop.	
E542	There is a lower tray ascent/descent error. (finisher)	
8001	There is a fault in the lower tray ascent/descent motor clock signal.	1. Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is it normal? 3. Is there a fault in the tray ascent/descent mechanism? 4. Try replacing the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	There is an area error.	
0003	The safety switch has activated.	
E584	There is a shutter unit error. (finisher)	

Code	Description	Remedy
8001	The shutter open sensor fails to go off. (The shutter does not close.)	1. Check the shutter home position sensor. Is it normal? 2. Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stack feeding motor and between the finisher controller PCB and the shutter open/close clutch. Is it normal? 3. Is there a fault in the shutter mechanism? 4. Try replacing the stack edging motor and the shutter open/close clutch. Is the problem corrected?
0002	The shutter open sensor does not go on. (The shutter does not open.)	
E590	There is a punch motor error. (punch unit)	
8001	The punch home position sensor is not detected even when the punch motor has been driven for 200 msec.	- Check the punch home position sensor, horizontal registration motor, and punch driver PCB; thereafter, turn off and then back on the main power.
8002	The puncher does not detect the punch home position sensor while the motor is at rest at time of punch motor initialization.	
E591	There is a punch dust sensor error. (punch unit)	
8001	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the presence of light.	- Turn off and then back on the main power.
8002	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the absence of light.	
E592	There is a punch horizontal registration sensor error. (punch unit)	
8001	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the presence of light. (trailing edge sensor)	- turn off and then back on the main power.
8002	The incoming light is faulty in the absence of light and voltage. (trailing edge sensor)	
8003	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the presence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 1)	
8004	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the absence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 1)	
8005	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the presence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 2)	
8006	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the absence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 2)	
8007	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the presence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 3)	
8008	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the absence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 3)	
8009	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the presence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 4)	
800A	The incoming light voltage is faulty in the absence of light. (horizontal registration sensor 4)	
E593	There is a punch shift motor error. (punch unit)	
8001	In the presence of light, the incoming light voltage HP sensor does not go off.	- Turn off and the back on the main power.
8002	In the absence of light, the incoming light voltage HP sensor does not go on.	
E5F0	There is a saddle paper positioning error.	

Code	Description	Remedy
0001	The paper positioning plate home position sensor does not go on even when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 1.33 sec. paper positioning plate motor (M4S), paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S)	- Check the paper positioning plate motor (M4S) and the paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S).
0002	The paper positioning plate home position sensor does not go off even when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 1 sec. paper positioning plate motor (M4S), paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S)	
E5F1	There is a saddle paper folding error.	
0001	The number of detection pulses of the paper folding motor clock sensor is lower than a specific value. paper folding motor (M2S), paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S)	- Check the paper folding motor (M2S) and the paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S).
0002	The state of the paper folding home position sensor does not change even when the paper folding motor has been driven for 3 sec. paper folding motor (M2S), paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S)	
E5F2	There is a saddle guide error.	
0001	The guide home position sensor does not go on even when the guide motor has been driven for 0.455 sec. guide motor (M3S), guide home position sensor (PI13S)	- Check the guide motor (M3S) and the guide home position sensor (PI13S).
0002	The guide home position sensor does not go off even when the guide motor has been driven for 1 sec. guide motor (M3S), guide home position sensor (PI13S)	
E5F3	There is a saddle alignment error.	
0001	The aligning plate home position sensor does not go on even when the aligning motor has been driven for 0.5 sec. (if at time of initialization, 1.67 sec) alignment motor (M5S), aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)	- Check the alignment motor (M5S) and the aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S).
0002	The aligning plate home position sensor does not go off even when the aligning motor has been driven for 1 sec. alignment motor (M5S), aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)	
E5F4	There is a saddle rear stapler error.	
0001	The stitching home position sensor does not go on even when the stitching motor (rear) has been driven in reverse for 0.5 sec or more. stitching motor (rear, M6S), stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S)	- Check the stitching motor (rear, M6S) and the stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S).
0002	the stitching home position sensor does not go off even when the stitching motor (rear) has been driven in normal direction for 0.5 sec or more. stitching motor (rear, M6S), stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S)	
E5F5	There is a saddle front stapling error.	

Code	Description	Remedy
0001	The stitching home position sensor does not go on even when the stitching motor (front) has been driven in reverse for 0.5 sec or more. stitching motor (front, M7S), stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S)	- Check the stitching motor (front, M7S) and the stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S).
0002	The stitching home position sensor does not go off even when the stitching motor (front) has been driven in normal direction for 0.5 sec or more. stitching motor (front, M7S), stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S)	
E5F6	There is a saddle butting error.	
8001	The paper pushing plate home position sensor does not go on even when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 0.3 sec or more. paper pushing plate motor (M8S), paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S)	- Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) and the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S).
8002	The paper pushing plate home position sensor does not go off even when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 80 msec. paper pushing plate motor (M8S), paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S)	
8003	The number of detection pulses of the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor is lower than a specific value. paper pushing plate motor (M8S), paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1S)	- Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) and the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1S).
8004	The paper pushing plate leading edge sensor does not go off even when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 80 msec. paper pushing plate motor (M8S), paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S)	- Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) and the paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S).
8005	The paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor does not go on even when the paper pushing plate has been driven for 0.3 sec or more. paper pushing plate motor (M8S), paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S)	
E5F9	There is a saddle switch error.	
0001	With any of the sensor identifying its respective cover as being closed, the inlet cover switch is identified as being open for 1 sec from the start of initial rotation or printing: - inlet cover sensor (PI9S) - front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) - delivery cover sensor (PI3S) Or, the front cover switch (MS2S) or the delivery cover switch (MS3S) is open. inlet cover switch (MS1S), front cover switch (MS2S), delivery cover switch (MS3S)	- Check the inlet cover switch (MS1S), front cover switch (MS2S), and the delivery cover switch (MS3S).
0002	With any of the following sensors identifying its respective cover as being closed, the front cover switch is identified as being open for 1 sec or more after the start of initial rotation or printing. - inlet cover sensor (PI9S) - front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) - delivery cover sensor (PI3S) - front cover switch (MS2S), delivery cover switch (MS3S)	- Check the front cover switch (MS2S) and the delivery cover switch (MS3S).

Code	Description	Remedy
0003	With any of the following sensors identifying its respective cover as being closed, the delivery cover switch is identified as being open for 1 sec or more from the start of initial rotation or printing: - inlet cover sensor (PI9S) - front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) - delivery cover sensor (PI3S) - delivery cover switch (MS3S)	- Check the delivery cover switch (MS3S).
E602	error in hard disk or HDD encryption board	
0001	[Cause] HD detection error: the HD cannot be detected; the machine fails to turn ready; an error state is returned. [Description] at time of Bootrom processing, BARSAC is started up and mounted (usrIde). [Timing] once at power-on	- See details for E602.
0002	[Cause] start-up file absent: the main CPU program does not exist on the HD (/BOOTDEV/BOOT/and lower). [Description] at time of Bootrom processing, when the system files are being loaded (usrIde). [Timing] once at start-up	- See details for E602.
0003	[Cause] HD write abort error: /BOOTDEV sector on the HD cannot be read. [Description] BARSAC (all areas at Bootable start-up) [Timing] once at start-up	- See details for E602.
0006	[Cause] SubBootable compatible with the PDL type does not exist in /BOOTDEV/BOOT. [Description] when SubBoot in oclibroot is being loaded [Timing] once at start-up of Bootable	- See details for E602.
0007	[Cause] ICC-Profile compatible with the PDL type does not exist in /BOOTDEV/PDL. [Description] beginning of oclibroot; the PDL team function is called and determined [Timing] once at start-up of Bootable	- See details for E602.
2000	error in the authentication between the host machine and the encryption board	- Check the encryption board connection, plug off/in the connector and turn off/on the power switch. - Perform the key-clear.
2001	error in alignment of the encryption board operation	- Perform the key-clear.
2002	the encryption board failure, etc.	- Check the encryption board connection, plug off/in the connector and turn off/on the power switch. - Perform the key-clear. - Replace the encryption board and reinstall the HDD format and SYSTEM of SST - Replace LAN-BARSAC board -> replace the main board
01XX	/FSTDEV is faulty.	- See details for E602.
02XX	/IMG_MNG is faulty.	- See details for E602.
03XX	/FSTCDEV is faulty.	- See details for E602.
04XX	/APL_GEN is faulty.	- See details for E602.
05XX	/TMP_GEN is faulty.	- See details for E602.
06XX	/TMP_FAX is faulty.	- See details for E602.
07XX	/TMP_PSS is faulty.	- See details for E602.
08XX	/PDLDEV is faulty.	- See details for E602.
09XX	/BOOTDEV is faulty.	- See details for E602.
10XX	/APL_MEAP is faulty.	- See details for E602.
11XX	/APL_SEND is faulty.	- See details for E602.
12XX	/APL_KEEP is faulty.	- See details for E602.
13XX	/APL_LOG is faulty.	- See details for E602.
FFXX	There is an error in a partition that cannot be identified.	- See details for E602.

Code	Description	Remedy
E604	The image memory is faulty or inadequate.	
0000	The memory is inadequate for the model.	- Add memory.
E609	The hard disk is faulty.	
0008	At time of start-up, the HDD fails to reach a specific temperature within a specific period of time.	- Replace the hard disk. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
0009	At time of a sleep shift, the temperature is below a specific level.	
E610	The HDD encryption key is faulty. (hardware composition error, initialization error, ID key error, ID processing error)	
0001	There is no encryption board.	- Check the hardware composition.
0002	The memory configuration is inadequate for the use of encryption.	
0101	The attempt to initialize the memory used for storage of the key has failed.	- Turn off and then on the main power.
0102	The attempt to initialize the encryption processing area has failed.	
0201	There is an error in the encryption processing area.	
0202	There is an error in the encryption processing area.	
0301	The attempt to create an ID key has failed.	
0302	A fault has been detected in the encryption key.	- Turn off and then on the main power. This error will reset all content on the HDD.
0303	A fault has been detected in the encryption key.	
0401	An error has been detected at time of coding.	- Turn off and then on the main power.
0402	An error has been detected at time of decoding.	
0501	error in the document management information on /FSTDEV	
E611	retried reboot due to SRAM crash and the like during the shutdown recovery job execution	
0000	SRAM data were broken and the stored job information cannot be read; this causes the repeated reboot trials to recover the power shutdown, and thus the redundant job transmission. This phenomenon triggers E code.	Clear SRAM to cancel the shutdown recovery job.
E612	error in postponement Timing: when starting the host machine	
0000	other errors Unlikely errors except the errors shown below Write the correct license and new serial numbers and turn off/on the power switch.	Write the correct license and new serial numbers and turn off/on the power switch.
0001	error in the license checksum Unmatched license checksum	
0002	error in the machine code Different machines are specified by the old and new machine codes, respectively.	
0003	error in the new serial number No data is entered in the new serial number field	
0004	error in old serial numbers The license serial number is unmatched with SoftID	
0005	error in postponement The license is written although postponement has already been performed once.	- Turn off and then on the main power.
E674	There is a fault in the communication between the fax controller PCB (2-line) and the main controller PCB.	
0001	An attempt to set fax device mode has failed.	- Check the connection of the cable between the fax controller PCB (2-line) and the main controller PCB. - Replace the ROM DIMM of the fax controller PCB (2-line). - Replace the fax controller PCB (2-line). - Replace the main controller PCB.
E710	There is a fault in IPC initialization.	

Code	Description	Remedy
0001	At time of power-on, the communications IC on the main controller PCB does not become ready within 3 sec after start-up.	- Check the connection of the cable.
0002	At power-on, the machine communication IC has detected an error.	
E711	There is a fault in the IPC communication.	
0001	After power-on, the occurrence of an error has been written 4 times in 1.5 sec to the error register of the communications IC on the main controller PCB.	- Check the connection of the cable.
0002	After power-on, the machine communication IC has detected an error.	
E713	There is a sorter IPC error.	
0000	An error has been detected in the sorter communication IC.	- Check the connection of the cable. - Replace the finisher controller PCB. - Replace the DC controller PCB.
E717	There is a fault in the communication with the NE controller. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0001	An error has occurred at time of NE controller start-up. The NE controller that was connected before power-off is not connected at power-on.	- Check the connection of the cable.
0002	There is an IP error while the NE controller is in operation. The IPC may have an open circuit or the IPC communication cannot be recovered.	
E719	There is a fault in the coin vendor. After correcting the fault, be sure to reset the error. (COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR)	
0001	An error has occurred at time of coin vendor start-up. The coin vendor was connected before power-off, but is not connected at power-on.	- Check the connector of the cable.
0002	An IPC error has occurred while the coin vendor is in operation. The IPC may have an open circuit, or the IPC communication cannot be recovered. The pickup/delivery signal line has an open circuit. An illegal connection has been detected.	
0003	While a unit price is being obtained at start-up, an error has occurred in the communication with the coin vendor.	
0011	An error has occurred at card reader start-up. The card reader that was connected before power-off is not connected at power-on.	
0012	An IPC error has occurred while the card reader is in operation. The IPC may have an open circuit, or the IPC communication cannot be recovered.	
E730	There is a fault in the PDL software.	
1001	There is an initialization error.	- Execute PDL resetting. - Turn off and then on the main power.
100A	An error has occurred that can be fatal to the system (e.g., initialization error).	
9004	There is a fault in the PAI communication with an outside controller.	- Turn off and then back on the main power. - Check the open I/F board and cable connection.
9005	There is a fault in video connection with an external controller.	- Replace the external controller open I/F board. - Replace the main controller PCB.
A006	absence of PDL response: there is no PDL response because of a fault in or the absence of Subbootable.	- Execute PDL resetting. - Turn off and then on the main power. - Check the connection of the SURF board. - Re-install the firmware. - Replace the main controller PCB.
A007	There is a mismatch in version between the machine control software and the PDL control software.	- Execute PDL resetting. - Turn off and then on the main power. - Execute full formatting and install the system software.
B013	The font data is corrupted.	- Turn off and then on the main power. - Re-install the system software. - Execute full formatting and install the system software.
E732	error in reader communication	
0001	There is a communication error between the reader and main controller (DDI-S communication error), or between the reader and the charger unit.	- Check the communication between the reader unit and the main controller. - Check the power supply of the reader unit. (Check to see if initialization takes place at start-up.) - Replace the reader controller PCB, reader relay PCB, or main controller PCB. - Check the connection of the charger unit. (iR5075/5075N only.)

Code	Description	Remedy
8888	error in difference of scanner	- check the scanner model - in service mode, select: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SCANTYPE to check
E733	There is a fault in the printer communication.	
0000	The attempt at communication with the printer fails at start-up.	- Check the connection of the cable between the DC controller and the main controller.
0001	There is a DDI-P communication error.	- Check the power supply of the printer. (Check to see if initialization takes place at start-up.) - Replace the DC controller PCB or the main controller PCB.
E740	There is a fault in the Ethernet board.	
0002	The MAC address is illegal.	- Replace the main controller PCB.
E744	There is a fault in the language file/boot ROM.	
0001	There is a mismatch between the language version on the HDD and the version of Bootable.	- Download the language file of the correct version.
0002	The size of the language file on the HDD is too big.	
0003	There is no language file that is described in CONfig.txt on the HDD.	
0004	A switchover to a language file on the HDD cannot be made.	
1000	The boot ROM in question is one designed for a different model.	- Replace the boot ROM with one of the appropriate version.
2000	The engine ID is illegal.	- Turn off and then on the main power.
E746	There is an error caused by a mismatch of the accessories board.	
0003	At start-up, a UFR board for a different model has been detected.	- Replace the UFR board with one for the model in question.
E748	error in controller board	
4910	error in detection of the controller plate differs from the equipment	- Replace the main controller PCB.
E804	There is a DC power supply fan error/there is an IH power supply cooling fan error.	
0000	The DC power supply fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec or more even when the DC power fan is on.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fan.
0001	The IH power supply cooling fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec or more even when the IH power supply cooling fan is on.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fan.
0002	The accessories power supply cooling fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec or more even when the accessories power supply cooling fan is on.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fan.
E805	There is a heat discharge fan error/there is a feed fan error.	
0001	The heat discharge fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec or more even when the heat discharge fan is on.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fan.
0002	The feed fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec even when the feed fan is on.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fan.
E808	IH power supply input error	
0001	The IH power supply input voltages are higher than the stipulated voltages	- Connect with the outlet of a correct voltage. - Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fixing heater power supply.
0002	The IH power supply input voltages are lower than the stipulated voltages	
E821	There is a cleaner clogging error.	
0001	Clogging of toner inside the cleaner has been detected with reference to an abnormal rise in the cleaner thermistor.	- Remove the collecting toner from inside the cleaner. - Replace the air filter of the heat discharge fan.
E824	There is a primary charging cooling fan error.	
0001	The primary charging cooling fan stop signal has been detected for 5 sec or more even when the primary charging cooling fan is on.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the fan.
E840	There is a shutter error.	

Code	Description	Remedy
0001	While the shutter is in operation, the sensor signal is not detected and, in addition, it is still not detected after 3 retries.	- Check the connection of the connector of the shutter motor and the shutter HP sensor. - check the mounting of the pin used to match the shutter gear phase of the fixing unit (See descriptions under "Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing Roller.")
0002	The interval of ON-OFF detection by the sensor in response to shutter operation is shorter than a specific time period.	- Replace the shutter HP sensor and the shutter motor.
E841	There is an error in the detection of fixing inlet guide connection.	
0001	At power-on, the connection of the fixing inlet guide solenoid is not detected.	- Check the connection of the connector. - Replace the solenoid.

3.1.2 E602 in Detail

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<E602-XXYY>

- XX= '00'

T-3-2

XX	YY	Description	Remedy
00	01	The HDD is not recognized. At start-up, the start-up partition (BOOTDEV) is not found.	1. Turn off the power, and check the HDD cable for disconnection; then, turn the power back on. 2. Turn on the power, and put your ear or finger against the HDD to see if the disk inside it is rotating. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace the main controller PCB.
	02	The system software for the main CPU is absent.	1. Start up in safe mode, and execute full formatting using the SST; then, re-install the system software, and turn off and then on the power. 2. Replace the HDD.
	03	An interrupt has been detected during writing to BootDevice.	1. Turn off the power, and turn it back on while holding down the 1 and 9 keys. See that the auto write interrupt sector repair routine starts and the control panel goes black. 2. See the progress of operation on the display (at the start, the upper left cursor will flash). When the display goes white, turn off and then back on the power. 3. Start in safe mode, and execute full formatting using the SST. Then, re-install the system software, and turn off and then back on the power.
	04	No incidence.	
	05	No incidence.	
	06	Error in sub CPU system undetected.	1. Start up in safe mode, and execute full formatting using the SST; then, re-install the system software, and turn off and then on the power. 2. Replace the HDD.
	07	Error in ICC Profile undetected.	1. Start up in safe mode, and execute full formatting using the SST; then, re-install the system software, and turn off and then on the power. 2. Replace the HDD.

- XX= '01 to FF'

T-3-3

XX				YY					
XX	CHK-TYPE	Partition	Description	At start-up			During operation		
				03	05	00,01,02,04	11,2 1	13,2 5	10,12,14,22,23,24
				Remedy			Remedy		
01	1	FSTDEV	compressed image data (e.g., Box)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12
02		IMG_MNG	file management table, profile						
03		FSTCDEV	job archiving (chasing)						
04		APL_GEN	general data						
05	2	TMP_GEN	general data (temporary file)						
06		TMP_FAX	for fax (temporary file)						
07		TMP_PSS	for PDL spool (temporary file)						
08	3	PDLDEV	for PDL spool (e.g., font)						
09	4	BOOTDEV	firmware (system, MEAP, key, certificate, PDF dictionary, RUI content, audio dictionary)	*3	*8				
10	5	APL_MEAP	MEAP application	*1	*5				
11	6	APL_SEND	address book, filter	*2	*5				
12	7	APL_KEEP	MEAP save data	*3	*8				
13	8	APL_LOG	System log saving capacity	*1	*5				
FF	0	Not identified	full check on HDD for faulty sector and recovery	*4	*7				

T-3-4

	YY	Description	Remedy
*1	03	An ongoing write operation is interrupted (at start-up).	1. Set '0' to CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CHECK; then, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Type in CHK-TYPE that corresponds to the partition in question, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power.
*2			1. Ask the user to download the address book data using a remote UI. 2. Set '0' to CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CHECK; thereafter, turn off and then on the power. 3. Start download mode, and execute full formatting using the SST; thereafter, turn off and then back on the power.
*3			The recovery operation for the boot partition necessarily requires the use of the SST in safe mode. 1. Set '0' for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CHECK; thereafter, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Start download mode, and execute full formatting and re-install the system software; thereafter, turn off and then back on the power.
*4			1. Set '0' to CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CHECK; then, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Execute HD-CLEAR by setting '1', '2', '3', and '5' to CHK-type; then, turn off and then back on the power.
*5	05	A file system error has occurred.	1. Type in CHK-TYPE corresponding to the partition in question, and execute HD-CLEAR; then, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.
*6			The machine does not permit execution of HD-CLEAR in service mode (to prevent loss of partition information such as address book and filter data). 1. Ask the user to download the address book data using a remote UI. 2. Start download mode from service mode; then, execute full formatting using the SST, and re-install the system software. Thereafter, turn off and then back on the power.
*7			1. Execute HD-CLEAR by setting "1", "2", "3", and "5" to CHK-TYPE; then, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.
*8			Recovery operation for the Boot partition necessarily requires the use of the SST in safe mode. 1. Start in safe mode, and execute full formatting in the SST, and re-install the system software. Thereafter, turn off and then on the power. 2. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.
*9	00 01 02 04	There is poor contact for the HDD, or there is a system error.	1. Check the cables and power cord for disconnection. 2. Start up in safe mode; then, execute full formatting using the SST, and re-install the system software. Thereafter, turn off and then back on the power. 3. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.
*10	11 21	There is poor connection of the HDD.	1. Check the cable and the power connectors for disconnection. 2. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.
*11	13 25	A write operation has been suspended.	File data as of Box on the HDD may be damaged. 1. Set '0' for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CHECK; then, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Set '1' for CHK-TYPE, and execute HD-CLEAR. (In the case of APL_SEND or BOOTDEV, reformat using the SST and re-install the system software.) 3. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.

	YY	Description	Remedy
*12	10 12 14 22 23 24	There is a system error or a packet data error.	1. Start up in safe mode; then, execute full formatting using the SST, and re-install the system software. Thereafter, turn off and then back on the power. 2. Replace the HDD, and re-install the system software.

3.2 Error Code (SEND)

3.2.1 Results of Self-Diagnosis

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-5

Cause	Remedy
There is a shortage of TCP/IP resources. Try again later.	
While continuous transmission is under way or has ended in FTP or Windows (SMB), a shortage of TCP/IP resources has occurred, not permitting reference.	Wait a while; then, try again.
Set the IP address.	
The IP address of the machine has yet to be set.	In user mode, set the IP address; thereafter, turn off and then on the machine.
The server does not respond. Check the settings.	
The settings of the selected server are not correct, or the server has not been turned on. Or, there may be a shortage of resources.	Wait a while; then, try again. If browsing is still not permitted, select a different server.
NetWare is in use. Try again later.	
NetWare is printing using PSeve or NDSPServer, not permitting browsing.	Wait until NetWare finishes printing; then, try again.
The layer in question at the target is too deep to browse.	
The number of characters is in excess of the number allowed.	The layer in question cannot be specified. Specify a different address.
There is no response.	
The server is not ready for file transmission.	Check the target.
The network is cut for file transmission. (An attempt to connect to the target of transmission may have failed, or there is an open circuit in the middle.)	Check the network.
The tree name is not specified for NetWare transmission.	Type in the tree name.
An error has occurred for TCP/IP in the course of e-mail or i-fax transmission.	Check the condition of the network cable and the connector.
Check TCP/IP.	
The machine's TCP/IP is not in operation.	In user mode, check the TCP/IP settings (IP address, DHCP, RARP, BOOTP).
The selected server cannot be found. Check the settings.	
The IP address in question cannot be identified.	1. In user mode, check the DNS settings. 2. On the DNS side, check the DNS data settings.
If the login information for the LDAP server is set to 'use (security authentication)', the host name in question cannot be identified.	In user mode, check the TCP/IP settings (DNS settings).
The selected server cannot be connected. Check the settings.	

Cause	Remedy
An attempt to connect to the IP address/port in question fails.	1. In user mode, check the TCP/IP settings (gateway address of the IP address settings). 2. In user mode, check the LDAP server settings. 3. Check to see that the LDAP server is operating normally. 4. If the login information of the LDAP server is set to 'use (security authentication)', check to see if the UDP packet is blocked by a filter.
Check the user name, password, or the settings.	
If the login information of the LDAP server is set to 'use' or 'use (security authentication)', the user name or the password is wrong.	In user mode, check the LDAP server settings (user name, password).
If the login information of the LDAP server is set to 'use (security authentication)', the domain name is wrong.	In user mode, check the LDAP server settings (domain name).
A timeout condition has occurred, and a search cannot be completed. Check the settings.	
The search cannot be completed within the specified period of time.	In user mode, increase the length of time before a timeout condition occurs (part of LDAP server settings).
An upper limit for search results has been exceeded. If the desired address is not indicated in the results, change the search conditions.	
The number of matches has exceeded the number of results brought up in response to the search.	1. Narrow down the search conditions, and try again. 2. Try increasing the upper limit.
The search conditions include a character that cannot be used for the selected server.	
The symbol \ is used in the search condition.	Remove the symbol \ from the search condition, and try once again.
The combination of characters used in the search condition fails to make up a correct search condition. There must be as many "s as there are "s The symbol * is not included within parentheses.	Check to be sure that the combination of characters is in keeping with the rule; then, try once again.
If LDAP of the server and the character code is version 2 (JIS), there is a character that is not part of the ASCII code (0x20-0x7E).	Remove any character that cannot be used; then, try once gain.
The version setting of the server is wrong, and the search cannot be initiated. Check the settings.	
In user mode, the LDAP server settings (server LDAP version and character code) is set for version 3; however, the LDAP server is operating for version 2.	In user mode, set the LDAP server settings so that the LDAP server version and the character code are both version 2.

3.2.2 Error Codes

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-6

Cause	Remedy
# 001	
There is a paper or original jam.	Remove the jammed paper or original.
# 003	
A communication lasting longer than a specific period of time (64 min) will cause an error state.	1. Decrease the resolution for transmission. 2. In the case of reception, ask the source to decrease the resolution or divide the original.
# 005	
The target does not respond within 35 sec.	Check to be sure that the target is ready to communicate; then, try once again.
The target is a non-G3 model.	Check the target.
# 009	
There is no paper.	Supply paper.

Cause	Remedy
The cassette is not fitted properly.	Fit the cassette correctly.
# 011	
The original to be transmitted is not placed properly.	Start over from the beginning.
# 012	
The target is out of recording paper, and transmission has failed.	Ask the target to supply recording paper.
# 018	
There is no response to a redial attempt.	Check to make sure that the target is ready for communication; then, try once again.
The target is engaged for a different communication, and transmission has failed.	Check to make sure that the target is ready for communication; then, try once again.
The settings do not match the settings of the target, and the transmission has failed.	Check to make sure that the target is ready for communication; then, try once again.
# 022	
The particulars of the group address selected as the forwarding target may have been deleted, or there is no more than a user box, thus causing the transmission to fail.	Try transmitting once again.
The attempt to transmit to an address registered in the address book has failed because the address has been removed from the address table while in wait for transmission.	Try once again.
# 037	
There is a shortage of memory, not permitting reception.	Remove error files and unnecessary files to increase available memory.
# 080	
F code is not set on the target.	Check the F code of the target, and start over.
# 081	
The appropriate password is not set on the target.	Check the password of the target, and start over.
# 099	
The transmission has been suspended in the middle.	Start over.
# 102	
There is a mismatch of F code or password.	Check the F code and the password of the target, and start over.
# 107	
There is a shortage of memory, not permitting transmission.	1. Decrease the resolution, and try once again. 2. Remove unnecessary files to increase available space.
# 701	
The group ID set when the job was introduced no longer exists. Or, the password has been changed.	Type in the correct group ID or the ID No. (using the keypad); then, start over.
# 702	
The memory is full, not permitting transmission.	1. Wait a while. Try again until the ongoing transmission of a job ends. 2. Try not to transmit to too many addresses at once; rather, try dividing the address into smaller groups.
# 703	
The memory image area is full, not permitting further writing.	1. Wait a while. Try transmitting after the ongoing transmission of a job ends. 2. Remove files from the Box; if the operation still fails to return to normal, turn off and then back on the main power.
# 704	
An error has occurred while an attempt is made to obtain address information from the address book.	Check the settings of the address, and try once again; if the operation is still not normal, try turning off and then back on the main power.
# 705	

Cause	Remedy
The image data size is in excess of the upper limit imposed on transmission data size set in user mode, thus causing suspension of transmission.	Try changing the upper limit imposed on transmission data size as part of the communication control settings of system control settings (user mode). When selecting low resolution mode or using i-fax, try decreasing the number of images to send at one time so that the transmission will not be in excess of the upper limit imposed on transfer data size.
# 706	
An address table is being imported from or to the remote UI; or, a different transmission component is being used.	Start over once again.
# 711	
All memory of the Box is used.	Delete files from the Box.
# 712	
The Box is full of files.	Remove file from the Box.
# 713	
The file has been removed from the Box before transmitting the URL.	Put the file in question back into the Box, and start over.
# 751	
The server is yet to start up. The network is disconnected. (The connection to the target may have failed, or the connection may have been cut in the middle.)	Check the target. Check the network.
# 752	
The SMTP server name of the e-main/i-fax in question may be wrong, or the server in question is yet to start up. Or, the appropriate domain name or e-mail address has not been set. Or, the network has been disconnected.	Using the network settings of the system control setup (user mode), check the SMTP server name, domain name, and e-mail address. Check to see that the SMTP server is operating normally. Check the connection of the network.
# 753	
A TCP/IP error has occurred in the course of e-mail transmission. (e.g., socket, select error)	Check the condition of the network cable and the connector. If the operation does not return to normal, try turning off and then back on the main power of the machine.
# 754	
The server has not been started up for transmission, or the network is disconnected. Or, the target settings are wrong.	Check the server and the network. Check the settings of the target.
# 755	
The TCP/IP settings are not operating normally, thus not permitting transmission.	In user mode, check the TCP/IP settings.
The appropriate IP address has not been set up.	In user mode, check the TCP/IP settings.
When the machine is started up, its IP address is not assigned by means of DHCP, RARP, or BOOTP.	In user mode, check the TCP/IP settings.
# 756	
In system control setup (user mode), 'use NetWare' is set to 'off' in NetWare settings.	In network settings of system control setup (user mode), set 'use NetWare' to 'on'.
# 801	
While e-mail is being transmitted or i-fax is transmitted/received, the communication with the SMTP server encountered a timeout error because of a factor associated with the main server.	1. Check to see that SMTP is operating normally. 2. Check the condition of the network.
While an SMTP connection is being used, the SMTP server has returned an error. The address setting is not correct. When data is transmitted to the file server, an error has occurred owing to a factor associated with the server.	1. Check to see if SMTP is operating normally. 2. Check the condition of the network. 3. Check the address setting. 4. Check the condition of the file server and the setting.

Cause	Remedy
An attempt has been made to transmit data to an address not authorized for a write operation.	Check the address setting.
In the course of transmitting data (file server), it was found that there is a file having the same name, and an overwrite operation to the file is prohibited.	Change the setting of the file server so that overwriting may be permitted.
In relation to transmission (file server), the folder name or the password that has been specified is wrong.	Check the address setting.
# 802	
In the system control setup (user mode), the settings of the SMTP server for e-mail/i-fax are wrong. The setting of the DNS server is wrong. The attempt to connect to the DNS server has failed.	In the network settings under system control settings (user mode), check the SMTP server name and the DNS server name. Check to see if the DNS server is operating normally.
# 803	
Before all pages have been transmitted, the target has cut off the network.	Try once again.
# 804	
When an attempt is made to transmit to the file server, it has been found that no match exists in the specified directory.	Check the address.
You are not authorized for access to the folder.	Set the server so that you will be authorized to access the folder.
# 806	
When an attempt to transmit to the file server is made, it has been found that the specified user name or password is wrong.	Change the user name or the password of the address.
The address specified for e-mail/i-fax transmission is wrong.	Check the address of the e-mail/i-fax in question.
# 810	
When an attempt is made to receive i-fax, a POP server connection error has occurred.	1. In user mode, check the POP server name setting. 2. Check the operation of the POP server. 3. Check the condition of the network.
While a connection is made to the POP server, an error has been returned by the POP server.	1. In user mode, check the POP server name setting. 2. Check the operation of the POP server. 3. Check the condition of the network.
While a connection is made to the POP server, a timeout error has occurred owing to a factor associated with the server.	1. In user mode, check the POP server name setting. 2. Check the operation of the POP server. 3. Check the condition of the network.
# 815	
If a file that has been transmitted to the file server is being printed, you will not be able to log in to the server in question.	Wait a while, and then try once again. Or, change the NetWare server settings of the target, or stop PServer.
# 818	
The data that has been received is in a format that does not permit printing.	Ask the source to change the file format and transmit it once again.
# 819	
The data that has been received is of a type that cannot be handled (i.e., its MIME information is illegal).	Ask the target to check the settings and transmit it once again.
# 820	
The data that has been received is of a type that cannot be handled (i.e., BASE64 or Unicode is illegal).	Ask the source to check the settings and transmit it once again.

Cause	Remedy
# 821	
The data that has been received is of a type that cannot be handled (i.e., TIFF interpretation error has occurred).	Ask the target to check the settings and transmit once again.
# 822	
The data that has been received is of a type that cannot be handled (i.e., the image cannot be decoded).	Ask the source to check the settings and transmit once again.
# 827	
The data that has been received is of a type that cannot be handled (i.e., part of its MIME information is not supported).	Ask the source to check the settings and transmit once again.
# 828	
HTML data has been received.	Ask the source to use a format other than HTML.
# 829	
The data that is being received consists of 100 pages or more.	The machine is designed so that it removes data for the 100th and subsequent pages and prints or saves in memory up to the 999th page. Ask the source to transmit the remaining pages one again.
# 830	
A DSN error notice has been received because of the following: the i-fax address or the target settings are wrong, or the data of the file that has been transmitted is greater than the size permitted by the mail server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the i-fax address and the target settings. 2. In user mode, decrease the upper limit imposed on the size of transmission data so that it is lower than the size permitted by the mail server. 3. Check the condition of the mail server, DNS server, and network.
# 831	
An attempt to receive i-fax in SMTP has failed because of the reception/printing range settings made as part of the IP address range setting in user mode.	Change the reception/printing range settings made as part of the IP address range setting in user mode.
# 832	
In user mode, the e-mail setting or the network setting is yet to be made, causing a mail server fault and, thus, preventing reception of MDN (transmission confirmation) mail.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In user mode, check the DNS setting, e-mail/i-fax setting, and IP address made as part of the network settings. 2. Check the condition of the mail server and the DNS server.
# 833	
The network settings have not been made in user mode or there is a mail-server related fault, thus preventing the transmission of the mail (MDN; transmission acknowledgement).	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In user mode, check the DNS setting, e-mail/i-fax setting, and IP address made as part of the network settings. 2. Check the condition of the mail server and the DNS server.
# 834	
The i-fax address or the condition settings of the target may be wrong, there may be a fault in the network or the mail server, or the target may have encountered a memory full condition, thus causing an MDS error notice.	Check the specified i-fax address and the target conditions.
# 835	
The number of text lines is more than the maximum number of lines permitted for i-fax.	Ask the target to decrease the number of text lines and try once again.
# 837	
A request has been made by a host that comes under the restrictions imposed by 'IP address range setting' in user mode.	Check the setting of the IP address range in user mode. The attempt to access in question may be illegal.
# 839	
The SMTP authentication (SMTPAUTH) user name or password for e-mail/i-fax (network settings) may be wrong.	Check the user name and password used for SMTP authentication (SMTPAUTH) as part of the network settings under system control settings (user mode).

Cause	Remedy
# 841	
In relation to an attempt for transmission for e-mail/i-fax, there is no coding algorithm that may be used in common with the mail server.	1. Set 'SSL' to 'OFF' as part of the network settings under system control settings (user mode). 2. Add a coding algorithm that may be used in common (mail server settings).
# 842	
In relation to an attempt for transmission of e-mail/i-fax, a request has been made for the use of a client certificate by the mail server.	1. Set 'SSL' to 'OFF' as part of the network settings under the system control settings (user mode). 2. Change the mail server settings so that it will not request a client certificate.
# 843	
The time used by the KDC (key distribution center) server and the time used by the machine are different significantly.	1. Correct the time as part of the date/time settings under the system control settings (user mode). 2. Correct the time used by the KDC (key distribution center) server.
# 847	
The memory of the Box has been used up, not permitting the storage of the received file in the fax box.	Remove unnecessary files from the fax box or the system box.
# 851	
The remaining memory of the machine is running short.	Check the remaining memory of the machine; then, remove unnecessary files for the Box.
There are more than 100 files in the specified box, not permitting additional storage.	Remove unnecessary files from the specified box.
# 852	
The main power switch has been turned off while a job is being executed, causing an error.	Check to see that the main power switch is on; as necessary, try once again.
# 899	
The transmission of e-mail or i-fax has ended. However, the transmission has gone through multiple servers, and there is no way of finding out whether the transmission has reached the target.	1. Check with the target to see if the transmission has arrived. 2. Check to see if an error notice has arrived.
# 995	
The reservation for the transmission has been cancelled.	As necessary, start over.

3.3 Jam Code

3.3.1 Jam Code (machine proper)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-7

Code	Jam
01xx	delay jam
02xx	stationary jam
0Axx	residual jam
0Bxx	cover open jam

T-3-8

Code	Sensor	Notation
xx01	registration paper sensor	PS29
xx02	write check sensor	PS28
xx03	vertical path 1 paper sensor	PS24
xx04	vertical path 2 paper sensor	PS25
xx05	vertical path 3 paper sensor	PS26
xx06	vertical path 4 paper sensor	PS27
xx07	right deck pull-off sensor	PS32
xx08	left deck pull-off sensor	PS33
xx0B	right deck retry sensor	PS19

Code	Sensor	Notation
xx0C	left deck retry sensor	PS20
xx0D	cassette 3 retry sensor	PS21
xx0E	cassette 4 delivery sensor	PS22
xx0F	fixing claw jam sensor	PS4
xx10	inside delivery sensor	PS35
xx11	outside delivery sensor	PS36
xx12	delivery jam sensor	PS46
xx13	reversal sensor 2	PS38
xx14	delivery sensor 1	PS37
xx15	duplexing paper sensor	PS34
xx16	duplexing pre-registration sensor	PS30
xx17	fixing outlet sensor	PS52
xx18	fixing inlet sensor	PS51

3.3.2 Jam Code (finisher-related)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-9

Code	jam
1001	inlet path sensor delay jam
1002	punch path sensor feed delay jam
1003	escape path sensor feed delay jam
1004	delivery path sensor delay jam
1101	inlet path sensor stationary jam
1102	punch path sensor feed stationary jam
1103	escape path sensor feed stationary jam
1104	delivery path sensor stationary jam
1200	finisher timing jam
1300	power-on jam
1400	door open jam
1500	stapler staple jam
1644	punch jam
1645	punch residual jam
1791	saddle feed path sensor feed delay jam
1792	saddle delivery sensor feed delay jam
1793	saddle inlet sensor feed delay jam
17A1	saddle feed path sensor feed stationary jam
17A2	saddle delivery sensor feed stationary jam
17A3	saddle inlet sensor feed stationary jam
1786	saddle stapler staple jam
1787	saddle power-on jam
1788	saddle door open jam
17B1	document registration sensor delay jam
17B2	reversing inlet sensor delay jam
17B3	reversing sensor delay jam
17B4	reversing timing sensor delay jam
17B5	deacceleration timing sensor delay jam
17B6	separation timing sensor delay jam
17B7	folding position accuracy sensor delay jam
17B8	upper stopper assembly path sensor delay jam
17B9	delivery 1 sensor delay jam
17BA	delivery 2 sensor delay jam
17BB	3-fold tray empty sensor delay jam
17C1	document registration sensor stationary jam
17C2	reversing inlet sensor stationary jam
17C3	reversing sensor stationary jam
17C4	reversing timing sensor stationary jam
17C5	deacceleration timing sensor delay jam
17C6	separation timing sensor stationary jam
17C7	folding position accuracy sensor stationary jam
17C8	upper stopper assembly path sensor stationary jam
17C9	delivery 1 sensor stationary jam
17CA	delivery 2 sensor stationary jam

Code	jam
17CB	3-fold tray empty sensor stationary jam
17D1	insert paper absent jam
17D7	insert power on jam
17D8	insert door open jam

3.3.3 Jam Code (ADF-related)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-10

Code	Sensor	Notation	Description
0001	post-separation sensor PCB	PCB2	The post-separation sensor does not detect paper when paper has been moved 452 mm after the start of separation.
0002	post-separation sensor PCB	PCB2	- The separation sensor detects paper when paper has been moved 500 mm (if extra-length, +200 mm) -45.5 mm after registration pickup. - the sensor goes on (paper with hole) before paper has been fed 12 mm after the detection of the trailing edge; the separation sensor detects paper after paper has been fed 50 mm from when the separation sensor has gone on.
0003	registration sensor	PI1	The registration sensor does not detect paper a feed length of 134.8 mm after the post-separation sensor has gone on.
0004	registration sensor	PI1	The read sensor goes off before the registration sensor goes off.
0005	read sensor PCB	PCB3	- The read sensor does not detect paper a feed length of 364.2 mm (182.1 x 2) from the point of registration. - The read sensor does not detect paper a feed length of 157.4 mm (78.7 x 2) from the point of No. 2 registration.
0006	read sensor PCB	PCB3	- The read sensor detects paper a feed length of 500 mm (if extra-length, +200 mm) after the start of feed, resumed after a temporary stop for reading. - At time of LTRR/LGL identification in mix mode, the read sensor detects paper a feed length of 514 mm after the start of feed from the edging wait point.
0007	delivery reversal sensor PCB	PCB4	If not in high-speed duplexing mode, the delivery sensor does not detect paper when paper is moved 132.1 mm after it has reached the leading edge lower stream roller with reference to the activation of the read sensor.
0008	delivery reversal sensor PCB	PCB4	The delivery sensor detects paper a feed length of 161.9 mm after the trailing edge read end point.
0009	No.2 registration sensor	PI12	-When feeding 4 times the distance between the No.1 registration roller and the No.2 registration sensor after re-pickup from the No.1 registration roller in the simplex pickup from the tray, the No.2 registration sensor does not turn on. (82.2 X 4)mm -When feeding 4 times the distance between the reversal roller + 20 mm and the No.2 registration sensor in the reversal duplexing pickup from the reversal duplexing path, the No.2 registration sensor does not turn on. (22.6 X 4)mm
0010	No.2 registration sensor	PI12	The No.2 registration sensor detects papers when feeding the length of 500 X 2 mm after the No.2 registration sensor turned on.
0011	No.2 read sensor	PI11	The No.2 read sensor does not turn on when feeding twice the distance between the read position and the No.2 read sensor after the start of reading a document. (47.4 X 2)mm
0012	No.2 read sensor	PI11	The read sensor detects papers after feeding the length of 500 mm (+200 mm for the long one) in the detection of the No.2 read sensor
0042	post-separation sensor PCB	PCB2	1st sheet, post-separation sensor, stationary
0043	registration sensor	PI1, PI12	1st sheet, registration sensor, non arrival
0044	registration sensor	PI1, PI12	1st sheet, registration sensor, stationary
0045	read sensor	PCB3, PI11	1st sheet, read sensor, non arrival
0046	read sensor	PCB3, PI11	1st sheet, read sensor, stationary
0047	delivery reversal sensor PCB	PCB4	1st sheet, delivery sensor, non arrival
0048	delivery reversal sensor PCB	PCB4	1st sheet, delivery sensor, stationary
0049	No.2 registration sensor	PI12	1st sheet, No.2 registration sensor, non arrival
0050	No.2 registration sensor	PI12	1st sheet, No.2 registration sensor, stationary
0051	No.2 read sensor	PI11	1st sheet, No.2 read sensor, non arrival
0052	No.2 read sensor	PI11	1st sheet, No.2 read sensor, stationary
0071	TIMING NG	-	fault in software timing
0073	TIMING NG	-	fault in shift motor
0090	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	The ADF has been opened while in operation.
0091	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	The ADF has been opened while in operating (paper wait).
0092	DF cover open/closed sensor	PI6	The cover has been opened while in operation (drive system in operation).

Code	Sensor	Notation	Description
0093	DF cover open/closed sensor	PI6	The cover has been opened while in operation (paper wait).

3.4 Alarm Code

3.4.1 Alarm Code

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-3-11

Location		Description	
04	pickup/feed system	0001	right deck lifter error
		0002	left deck lifter error
		0003	3rd cassette lifter error
		0004	4th cassette lifter error
		0008	optional deck lifter error
06	fixing system	0003	fixing web absent
11	drum cleaner system, collecting toner collection system	0001	collecting toner case full
30	high-voltage system	0001	primary charging assembly leakage
		0002	transfer charging assembly leakage
		0003	separation charging assembly leakage
32	potential control system	0001	potential control VD alarm
		0002	potential control VL alarm
33	fan system	0001	delivery assembly curl-removing fan alarm
		0009	duplexing feed fan alarm
		0016	exhaust fan 1 alarm
60	sorter, finisher, shift tray as a whole	0001	shift tray alarm
61	sorter/finisher stapling system	0001	staple absent
62	saddle stitching system	0001	stitch absent
65	sorter/finisher puncher system	0001	punch case full

Chapter 4 User Mode Items

4.1 User Mode Items

4.1.1 Common Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory settings.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

T-4-1

Mode	Description
initial function	select initial function: *copier/transmit/fax, print,box/MEAP use 'system status screen' as initial screen: ON/*OFF give priority to 'device' of 'system status screen': *ON/OFF
post-auto clear function	*use previous/do not use previous function group order setup: group A, MEAP, group B
enable/disable buzzer	input sound: *ON/OFF input invalid sound: ON/*OFF replenish alert sound: ON/*OFF alert sound: *ON/OFF job end sound: *ON/OFF
indicate power level message	*ON/OFF
inch input	ON/*OFF (if US, *ON)
enable/disable cassette auto select	copier/printer/box/other (manual feed: ON/*OFF + individual cassette: *ON/OFF) consider copy/power type: *ON/OFF (toggle)
register paper type	right cassette deck/left cassette deck: plain paper/colored paper/recycled paper/heavy paper/bond paper (outside Japan)/letterhead (plain paper; outside Japan)/letterhead (heavy paper; outside Japan)/punched paper (outside Japan) cassettes 3/cassette 4: *plain paper/colored paper/recycled paper/bond paper (outside Japan)/letterhead (plain paper; outside Japan)/letterhead (heavy paper; outside Japan)/punched paper (outside Japan)/index sheet cassette 5 (paper deck): *plain paper/colored paper/recycled paper/heavy paper/bond paper (outside Japan)/letterhead (heavy paper; outside Japan)/punched paper (outside Japan)
change power save mode	*-10%, -25%, -50%, no recovery interval
set power consumption level in sleep state	*low/high
set delivery tray** (w/ finisher)	With Finisher, AD1 / Saddle Finisher, AD2 attached Tray A: Copy, box, printer, *reception/*fax, *others *Tray B: *Copy, *box, *printer, reception/fax, others Tray C: *Copy, *box, *printer, reception/fax, others Basic position of the tray: *Tray B / Tray C / Not specified
set printing priority	copier: *1/2/3 printer: 1/*2/3 box: 1/2/*3 reception/fax: 1/2/*3 other: 1/2/*3
register image for image merge	register: original size/full merge, see-through merge (20, *50, 99%) form name (24 characters max.) form read delete check coy: cassette select, print sort detail info: display detail info, change form name

Mode	Description
register character string for print/stamp	register/edit: change character string (16 character max.)
	delete
register manual feed paper standard mode	ON (select paper size/select paper type)/OFF
select standard mode for local print	select paper type: *auto paper select/paper source select number of prints: *1 to 9999 sorter: sort/group/staple sort/*shift sort/shift group/rotation sort/rotation group/punch hole/z-fold/C-fold duplex print: ON (open like book/open like calendar) OFF delete file after printing: merge file:
switch language	ON/*OFF
reverse screen color	ON/*OFF
between-job shift**	*ON/OFF
between-job interleaf	ON (paper source select) *OFF
between-set interleaf	ON (setting range between *10 and 9999; paper source select) *OFF
right wait time indication	copier/box/other (for each, ON/*OFF)
Registration of the size of the side paper deck**	A3/A4/A4R/B4/B5/11×17/LGL/LTR/LTRR
output tray paper mix**	*ON/OFF
original reading area cleaning prompt	*ON/OFF
function limit mode**	ON/*OFF
shut-down mode	execute key
reset common settings	Do you really want to reset?: yes/no

4.1.2 Timer Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

T-4-2

Mode	Description
time fine-adjust	by +/- in 1-min increments
auto sleep time	10 sec; *1, 2, 10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50 min; 1 hr; 90 min; 2, 3, 4 hr
auto clear time	0=none, 1, ..., *2, ..., 9 min (in 1-min increments)
silent mode shift time	0=none, 1*, ..., 9 min (1-min increments)
set weekly timer	everyday from Sun to Sat (00:00 to 23:59; in 1-min increments)

4.1.3 Adjustment/Cleaning

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

T-4-3

Mode	Description
zoom fine-adjust	XY, independent: -1.0% to +1.0% (in 0.1%-increments), *0%
center bind staple edging**	start key
change middle bind position** (w/ saddle finisher)	size: A3, 11×17/B4/A4R, LTR, LGL position: -2.0 mm to +2.0 mm (in -0.25-mm increments), *0 mm
Adjustment of the creep (displacement) correction volume	Correction volume (For each type of paper): 0.00 to 2.00mm (Interval of 0.05mm) *0.25mm
Adjustment of the folding position**	Adjustment of Z-fold position -2mm to +1.5mm, *0mm (incremented by 0.5mm) Adjustment of C-fold position A: 0.0mm to 6.0mm, *0mm B: 0.0mm to 3.0mm, *0mm (incremented by 0.5mm)
correct density	copier/box, transmit; 9 steps each (at time of shipment, set to '5')
Adjustment of contrast of characters/background	Relative contrast value: -7 to *+7, 0 Print setting for sample printing Setting of the standard value: 0 to 64, *20 Density of a latent image: 0 to 36, *8

Mode	Description
Feeder cleaning	Start key
Drum cleaning	Start key
Wire cleaning	Start key

4.1.4 Report Output

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

T-4-4

Mode	Description
transmit (specifications setup)**	transmission result report: *only if error/ON/OFF indicate transmission original: *ON/OFF transmission control report print every 100 communications: *ON/OFF print at specific time: *ON/OFF time settings: *00:00 to 23:59 separate transmission/reception: (toggle) ON/*OFF
fax (specifications setup)**	fax transmission result report: *only if error/ON/OFF indicate transmission original: *ON/OFF fax communications control report print automatically every 40 communications: *ON/OFF print at specific time: ON/*OFF time setting: *00:00 to 23:59 separate transmission/reception: (toggle) ON/*OFF fax reception results report: *only if error/ON/*OFF
print list (transmission)**	fax box reception report: *ON/OFF address book list: print list user data request: Do you want to print the user data list?: yes/no
print list (fax)**	user data list: Do you want to print the user data list?: yes/no

4.1.5 System Control Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

***Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed. ÅiR5065,iR5055Åj

T-4-5

Mode	Description
set system administrator information	system control group ID: 7 characters max. system control ID: 7 characters max. system administrator name: 32 bytes mail address: 64 bytes contact: 32 bytes comment: 32 bytes
group ID controller	group ID control: ON/*OFF ID No. register: register, edit, delete, function control count control: clear, count print, all clear print job w/ unknown ID: *ON/OFF scan job w/ unknown job: *ON/OFF
communication control setup	e-mail/**i-fax setup transmission data size upper limit: 0=none, 1 to 99 MB; *3 MB abbreviation: 40 characters or 20 2-byte characters; *attached images transmission time-out in full state: 1 to 99 hr, *24 hr Timeout in divided reception: 1 to 99 hours, *24 hours print for MDN/DSN reception: ON/*OFF always notify if reception error: *ON/OFF

Mode	Description
	relay through server: ON/*OFF Permit MDN not via server: *ON/OFF
	fax setup**
	transmission start speed: *33600bps, 14400bps, 9600bps, 7200bps, 4800bps, 2400bps
	reception start speed: 33600bps*, 14400bps, 9600bps, 7200bps, 4800bps, 2400bps
	reception password: 20 characters max.
	FIS switch: ON/*OFF
	system box setup
	system box ID No.**: 7 characters
	use fax memory reception**: ON/*OFF
	use i-fax memory reception**: ON/*OFF
	memory reception start time**: by day, by day of week, *no specification
	memory reception end time**: by day, by day of week, *no specification
enable/disable remote UI	*ON/OFF use SSL: ON/*OFF
limit target**	address book ID No.: 7 characters max. address book access No. control: ON/*OFF new target limit: ON/*OFF
Permit transmission from the fax driver	*ON/OFF
Entry for confirmation when entering a fax number	ON/*OFF
Restrictions of the domain for transmission of email/IFAX	Restrictions of the domain for transmission: ON/*OFF Permitted domain for transmission: Registration, details/edit, deletion
Permit PDF transmission when using an expired certificate	ON/*OFF
Always attach a device signature when performing PDF transmission	ON/*OFF
device information setup	device name: 32 characters, or 16 2-byte characters installation site: 32 characters, or 16 2-byte characters
transfer setup**	reception method, enable/disable condition, registration, unconditional transfer registration, e-mail priority, detail/edit, delete, list print
delete bulletin	delete
auto on-line/off-line shift***	auto on-line shift: ON/*OFF auto off-line shift: ON/*OFF date/time setup: set (12 numeric characters) time zone: GMT -12:00 to GMT +12:00 (GMT +*9:00) daylight saving time: ON/*OFF
adjust date/time	set (12 characters) time zone: GMT -12:00 to GMT +12:00 (GMT +*9:00) daylight saving time: ON, *OFF
register LDAP server**	register, detail/edit, delete, Registration/edit of LDAP search attributes, list print
register license	24 characters
set print expansion	ON/*OFF group ID: ON/*OFF date: ON/*OFF text: ON/*OFF
Restrictions in the system status screen	Display the job status before authentication: *ON/OFF Permit secure print from the print status: ON/*OFF Display the job history: *ON/OFF Obtain the job history from the management software: Permit / Prohibit

Mode	Description
MEAP setup	use HTTP: *ON/OFF use SSL: ON/*OFF print system info: print
set machine information distribution	- register recipient: auto search/register, register, detail info, delete,list printing - auto distribution: every day, by day of week, *no specification user mode setting: ON/*OFF network setup: include, do not include group ID: ON/*OFF address book: ON/*OFF Setting of the print specifications: ON/*OFF - manual distribution setup: user mode settings; ON/*OFF network setup: include, do not include group ID: ON/*OFF address book: ON/*OFF Setting of the print specifications: ON/*OFF - limit reception according to original ON/*OFF - recover data: user mode settings, group ID, address book,setting of the print specifications - time reception according to machine: user mode settings; *ON/OFF group ID: *ON/OFF address book: *ON/OFF Setting of the print specifications: ON/*OFF Setting of the print specifications: ON/*OFF
Initialization of all data/settings	Initialization
ON/OFF to display ID/user name	*ON/OFF
Setting of the encryption secure print	Reception of the encryption secure print job: ON/*OFF Automatic printing when using an IC card: ON/*OFF
USB setting	Use the USB device: *ON/OFF Use the USB host: *ON/OFF
ON/OFF to display hidden characters when entering secret information	*ON/OFF
Forcible tint block printing mode**	Copy: *Disable / Enable Box: *Disable / Enable Print: *Disable / Enable
Simultaneous setting for user box	Time until the document is automatically deleted: (0, 1, 2, 3, 6, 12) hours, (1, 2, *3, 7, 30) days Print when saving the data from the printer driver: *ON/OFF

4.1.6 Copier Specifications

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

T-4-6

Mode	Description
quick screen paper select key setup	large* (manual feed/manual feed paper change reservation/(paper source) 1*/(paper source) 2*/(paper source) 3*/(paper source) 4*/(paper source) 5/small
single screen preference key 1 setup	*no setting, individual modes
simple scan preference key 2 setup	*no setting, individual modes
quick screen preference key setup	number of preference keys indicated: 5*/10 setup: set location -> set individual keys *no setting, individual modes
auto sort**	*ON/OFF
priority on screen orientation	ON/OFF*
auto vertical/horizontal rotation	*ON/OFF
print photo mode	ON/*OFF
change standard mode	register/reset (factory shipment: 1 set, auto paper select, auto density, auto image quality; printer: local)

Mode	Description
register remote copy printer	priority/register (7 units max.)/detail info/delete
remote copy transmission time-out	*30 (5 to 30) sec
reset copier specifications	Do you want to reset? yes/no (auto sort: ON/face-up delivery: ON/preference key setup: no)

4.1.7 Transmission/Reception Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

T-4-7

Mode	Description
set common transmission settings**	<p>register source name**: 01 to 99; register/edit (24 characters max.); delete</p> <p>register user abbreviation**: 24 characters max.</p> <p>permit use of non-ASCII code for FTP transmission**: (ON/*OFF)</p> <p>error file clear**: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>error transfer file handling**: always print/save/print/*off</p> <p>print photo mode**: (ON/*OFF)</p> <p>number of retries**: (*3 times; 0 to 5 times)</p> <p>change transmission function standard mode**</p> <p>read mode: black-and-white machine default *black at 200 dpi/black at 300 dpi/black at 600 dpi/black at 400 dpi (Note: if fax only, black at 200x100*/black at 200x200/black at 200x400/black at 400x400)</p> <p>file type: *TIFF/PDF/PDF(OCR)</p> <p>divide by page: (toggle) ON/*OFF</p> <p>register routine task button**: (register/edit, delete; display comment: ON/*OFF)</p> <p>Display a confirmation message when calling the routine task button: *ON/OFF</p> <p>PDF (OCR setup)**</p> <p>original orientation auto detection: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>limit number of characters in file name (OCR): (1 to *24)</p> <p>Check the certificate of the device signature</p> <p>Detailed information of the certificate: Verification of the certificate</p> <p>Check the certificate of the user signature</p> <p>Detailed information of the certificate: Verification of the certificate</p> <p>Display a confirmation message when sending the IC card signature: *ON/OFF</p> <p>transmission screen initial display**: routine task button/one-touch button/*new address</p> <p>transmission source record**: *keep/do not keep</p> <p>indication location: inside image/*outside image</p> <p>target abbreviation indication: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>telephone number marking: *FAX/TEL</p> <p>Use the chunk divided transmission function when sending WebDAV: *ON/OFF</p> <p>Display a confirmation message to check the "Completed" stamp for double-sided transmission: *ON/OFF</p> <p>reset transmission settings: Do you want to reset? yes/no</p>
common reception setup**	<p>duplex record (ON/*OFF)</p> <p>cassette select</p> <p>switch A: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>switch B: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>switch C: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>switch D: (*ON/OFF)</p> <p>image reduction</p>

Mode	Description
	image reception: (*ON/OFF) reduction mode: *auto/fixed fixed mode reduction rate: E210 up: 75% to 97% (in 1% increments), *90% reduction direction: vertical/horizontal, *vertical only
fax basic registration setup**	2-on-1 record (ON/*OFF) reception info record: keep/*do not keep register user telephone number** telephone number: 20 characters max. select line type**: 100V: *20 pps/10 pps/push volume adjust alarm volume: 0 to 8 (84) communication volume: 0 to 8 (*4) off-hook alarm: (*ON/OFF) ECM transmission (*ON/OFF)
fax transmission function setup**	set pause length: 1 to 15 seconds (*2 seconds) auto redial: (*ON/OFF) number of redial sessions: 100V: 1-15(*2) interval of redial session (min): 2 to 99 (*2) redial at transmission error: 1st and error pages/all pages/off
fax reception function setup**	pre-transmission dial tone check: (*ON/OFF) ECM reception: (*ON/OFF) select reception mode *Automatic reception / modem dial-in FAX/TEL switch fax/tel switchover: at ring start: 0 to 30 sec (*8), ring length: 15 to 300 sec (*17), post-ring operation: end/*receive, voice answer: ON/*OFF auto reception modem dial-in fax/tel switchover ring sound: ON (number of rings: 0 to n)/*OFF remote reception: ON (remote reception ID: 00 to 99, *25)/*OFF
fax addition line setup**	auto reception switchover: 1 to 99 seconds, *15 seconds)/*OFF register user telephone number: 20 characters max. register user abbreviation: 24 characters max. select type of line: *20 pps/10 pps/push select transmission line: line 1: *priority on transmission/do not permit transmission line 2: priority on transmission/do not permit transmission

4.1.8 Box Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory settings.

**Indicated when the appropriate accessory is installed.

T-4-8

Mode	Description
set/register user box	select box: 0-99 register box name: 24 characters max(one-byte characters). ID No.: 0-9999999 file auto delete: 0=none, 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hr; 1, 2, *3, 7, 30 days URL transmission setup Print when saving data from the print driver: ON/*OFF reset
print photo mode	(ON/*OFF)
read setup standard mode	register/reset

Mode	Description
set/register fax box**	select box: 0-49 register box name: 24 characters max(one-byte characters). ID No.: 0-9999999 set URL transmission reset

4.1.9 Printer Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory settings.

**Indicated in the presence of a specific accessory.

T-4-9

Mode	Description
settings	<p>number of copies: 1 to 9999 (*1)</p> <p>duplex: duplex/*simplex</p> <p>pickup</p> <p>default paper size: *A4 (additional 10 possible) default paper type: plain (additional 8 possible) paper size replacement: replace/*do not replace</p> <p>adjust print</p> <p>**super smooth: *use/do not use **toner density: 1 to 9 (*5) toner save: enable/*disable thin line correction: *enable/Disable Correction of horizontal lines: *Disable/Level 1/Level 2/Level 3/Level 4 Correction of horizontal lines: *Disable/Level 1/Level 2/Level 3/Level 4 Resolution: Super Fine/*Fine</p> <p>layout</p> <p>bind position: *Staple the long side/Staple the short side bind margin: -50to+50mm (*0.0) Distance to move the stapling position in a direction of the short/long side (front/back): -50to+50mm (*0.0)</p> <p>auto error skip**: skip/*do not skip</p> <p>secure print delete time length: *1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24 hr</p> <p>timeout: 5 to 300 (*15 sec)/disable</p> <p>RIP: yes/*no</p> <p>sorter**: *do not use/sort/rotation sort/rotation group/shift sort/shift group/staple sort/Staple group</p> <p>punch**: *disable/top/bottom/left/right</p> <p>booklet print**: *disable/open to left/open to right</p> <p>middle bind**: enable/*disable</p> <p>**Correction of creep (displacement): *Disable/Automatic/Correction volume (0 to 10mm)</p> <p>**Insert of the front cover: *Disable/Inserter 1/Inserter 2</p> <p>**Fold: *Disable/Z-fold/C-fold</p> <p>**transparency interleaf: *disable/white sheet/printed sheet</p> <p>**print in sets</p>

Mode	Description
	print in sets: enable/*disable print position: *5 locations/upper left/lower left/upper right/lower right/Whole image print start character: 1 to 9999 (*1) print size: small at 12-point/medium at 24-point/*large at 36-point density: 1 to 5 (*3) Adjustment of the printing position (vertical/horizontal): -8 to +8mm (*0)
	Delivery side specification: *facedown/faceup
	**printer operating mode: *auto (additional 9 settings possible)
	**priority emulation (*none/ additional settings possible)
	**auto switchover
	LIPS: *enable/disable N201: *enable/disable ESC-P: *enable/disable 15577: *enable/disable HP-GL: *enable/disable HP-GL/2: *enable/disable Imaging: *enable/disable PDF1.5: *enable/disable
	**connection recognition: *enable/disable
	printer settings rest: yes/no

4.1.10 Address Book Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

T-4-10

Mode	Description
fax (register address)	register name: Japanese (2-byte zone only); 24 characters telephone number: 120 characters max. (+ pause, tone, <, >, back space, space)
	ISDN sub address, F net, DT, R, PIN, detail setup)
	detail setup F code: 20 characters max. password: 20 characters max. ECM transmission: *ON/OFF transmission speed: 33600bps*/14400bps/9600bps/4800bps line selection: line 1/line 2/*auto select international transmission: domestic*/international 1/international 2/international 3 communication mode: G4, G3*/G3 only
e-mail (register address)	register name: 24 characters, or 12 2-byte characters register name: Japanese (2-byte zone only); 24 characters
	e-mail address: 128 characters
i-fax (register address)	register address: 24 characters, or 12 2-byte characters register name: Japanese (2-byte zone only), 24 characters
	mode select: *Simple/Full
	i-fax address: 128 characters
	relay through server: ON/*OFF
	fixed sentence 1: 40 characters
	fixed sentence 2: 16 characters
	detail setup paper size: A4/LTR+ B4, A3/11x17 compression method: MH+ MR/MMR resolution: 200x100dpi, 200x200dpi+200x400dpi/300x300dpi/400x400dpi/600x600dpi

Mode	Description
file (register addresses)	register name: 24 characters, or 12 2-byte characters register name: Japanese (2-byte zone only), 24 characters protocol: *FTP/Windows (SMB)/Netware (IPX) host name: 128 characters path to folder: 12* characters user name: FTP, NetWare (IPX); 24 characters Windows (SMB); 15 characters password: FTP, NetWare (IPX); 24 characters Windows (SMB); 14 characters
group (register address)	register name: 24 characters, or 12 2-byte characters register name: Japanese (2-byte zone only), 24 characters address book: select from following already registered in address book: fax, e-mail, i-fax, remote file system, jet SEND, box, local printer save in box: select box: 00 to 99 delete simple search server to search: from pull-down from LDAP server already registered (search conditions): name: 128 characters, or 64 2-byte characters e-mail: 12* characters fax: 128 characters detail search server to search: from pull-down from LDAP server already registered (search conditions): *name/e-mail/fax/group/group unit under following: * includes next/does not include next/is identical to next/is not identical to next/start with next/ends with next name, group, group unit: 128 characters, or 64 2-byte characters e-mail, fax: 128 characters (condition combination): *or/and search result register type: *all e-mail/fax register e-mail for i-fax: ON/*OFF (toggle)
register name of address book	register name: 16 characters
register one-touch button	register/edit address: register/edit, delete one-touch name: 12 characters max.

4.1.11 Voice Guide Settings

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

*Factory default.

T-4-11

Mode	Description
voice guide reading volume/speed	volume: 1 to 5* to 9 speed: (slow) -5 to 0* to +5 (fast)
voice type	male/female*
speaker/headphone switch	speaker*/headphone
auto clear in voice guide	ON/OFF*
initialize voice guide settings	Is it OK to initialize? yes/no

Chapter 5 Service Mode

5.1 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode)

5.1.1 COPIER

5.1.1.1 COPIER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<VERSION>

T-5-1

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
	Use it to indicate the ROM version of a particular PCB (copier and accessory). -if <R-CON XX.YY>, XX indicates the version number and the YY, R&D control number. -if no PCB is connected, the indication will be <-,>.	
DC-CON	indicates the ROM version of the DC controller PCB.	1
R-CON	indicates the ROM version of the reader controller PCB.	1
PANEL	indicates the ROM version of the control panel CPU PCB.	1
FEEDER	indicates the ROM version of the DADF controller PCB.	1
SORTER	indicates the ROM version of the finisher controller PCB.	1
FAX	indicates the ROM version of the fax control PCB (for 2-line configuration).	1
NIB	indicates the version of the network software.	1
SDL-STCH	indicates the ROM version of the saddle stitcher controller PCB.	1
MN-CONT	indicates the ROM version of the main controller PCB.	1
DIAG-DVC	indicates the ROM version of the self-diagnosis device.	1
RUI	indicates the version of the remote UI.	1
PUNCH	indicates the version of the punch unit.	1
LANG-EN	indicates the version of the English language file.	1
LANG-FR	indicates the version of the French language file.	1
LANG-DE	indicates the version of the German language file.	1
LANG-IT	indicates the version of the Italian language file.	1
LANG-JP	indicates the version of the Japanese language file.	1
JAVA-VM	indicates the version of JavaVM built into bootable.	1
MEAP	indicates the version of the MEAP content on the hard disk.	1
OCR-CN	indicates the version of OCR of the Chinese language file (simplified).	1
OCR-JP	indicates the version of OCR of the Japanese language file.	1
OCR-KR	indicates the version of OCR of the Korean language file.	1
OCR-TW	indicates the version of OCR of the Chinese language file (traditional).	1
BOOTROM	indicates the version of boot ROM of the main controller PCB. in "xx.yy_z," "z" indicate the type of boot ROM.	1
TTS-JA	indicates the version of the Japanese language audio dictionary.	1
TTS-EN	indicates the version of the English language audio dictionary.	1
WEB-BRWS	indicates the version of the web browser.	1
HELP	indicates the version of the Simple Navigation.	1
FIN-INS	indicates the version of the Folding/Inserting unit.	1
WEBDAV	indicates the version of the WEBDAV.	1
TIMESTMP	indicates the version of the Timestamp.	1
LANG-CS	indicates the version of the Czech language file.	2
LANG-DA	indicates the version of the Danish language file.	2
LANG-EL	indicates the version of the Greek language file.	2
LANG-ES	indicates the version of the Spanish language file.	2
LANG-ET	indicates the version of the Estonian language file.	2
LANG-FI	indicates the version of the Finnish language file.	2
LANG-HU	indicates the version of the Hungarian language file.	2
LANG-KO	indicates the version for the Korean language file.	2
LANG-NL	indicates the version of the Dutch language file.	2
LANG-NO	indicates the version of the Norwegian language file.	2
LANG-PL	indicates the version of the Polish language file.	2
LANG-PT	indicates the version of the Portuguese language file.	2
LANG-RU	indicates the version of the Russian language file.	2
LANG-SL	indicates the version of the Slovenian language file.	2

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
LANG-SV	indicates the version of the Swedish language file.	2
LANG-TW	indicates the version of the Chinese language file (traditional).	2
LANG-ZH	indicates the version of the Chinese language file (simplified).	2
LANG-BU	indicates the version of the Bulgarian language file.	2
LANG-CR	indicates the version of the Croatian language file.	2
LANG-RM	indicates the version of the Romanian language file.	2
LANG-SK	indicates the version of the Slovakian language file.	2
LANG-TK	indicates the version of the Turkish language file.	2
LANG-CA	indicates the version of the Catalan language file.	2

<ACC-STES>

T-5-2

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STES		
Sub-item	Description	Level
FEEDER	indicates the connection of an ADF. 0: not connected; 1: connected	1
SORTER	indicates the connection of the finisher and puncher unit. sorter type 0: none; 1: finisher; 2: saddle finisher; 3: shift tray punch type 0: none; 1: 2-hole; 2: 2/3-hole; 3: 4-hole (fr); 4: 4-hole (sw)	1
DECK	indicates the connection of a paper deck. 0: not connected; 1: connected	1
CARD	indicates the connection of a card reader. 0: card reader connected, but card not inserted 1: card reader not connected, or card reader connected and card inserted (with machine ready for copying, [1]; with machine not ready for copying, [0])	1
DATA-CON	indicates the connection of a copy data controller. 0: not connected; 1: connected	1
RAM	indicates the size of the memory mounted on the main controller PCB. 1024MB	1
COINROBO	indicates the connection of a coin vendor. 0: not connected; 1: connected	1
NIB	indicates the connection of a network board. 0: not connected 1: Ethernet board connected 2: TokenRing board connected 3: Ethernet board and TokenRing board connected	1
PS/PCL	indicates the presence/absence of PS/PCL firmware. 0: absent; 1: PS/PCL; 2: PS Kanji	1
RIP1	0: no; 1: yes	1
NETWARE	indicates the presence/absence of NetWare firmware. 0: absent; 1: present	1
PDL-FNC1	b31 : BDL b30 : PS b29 : PCL b28 : PDF b27 : LIPS b26 : N201 b25 : I5577 b24 : ESC/P b23 : HPGL b22 : HPGL2 b21 : IMAGING b20 : KS b19 : BMLinkS b18 to b16 : reserved (for possible addition of PDL)	1
PDL-FNC2	b15 to b0: reserved (for possible addition of PDL)	1
HDD	indicates the type name of the HDD.	1
PCI1/2/3	indicates the board name of PCI1/2/3. if not connected, indicates [-] (hyphen). if connected, indicates the board name. <Board Name> iSLTO: wireless LAN board Voice Board: voice guidance board 3DES+USB-HOST: security expansion board	1

<ANALOG>

T-5-3

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TEMP	indicates the machine inside temperature (environment sensor); in deg C	1

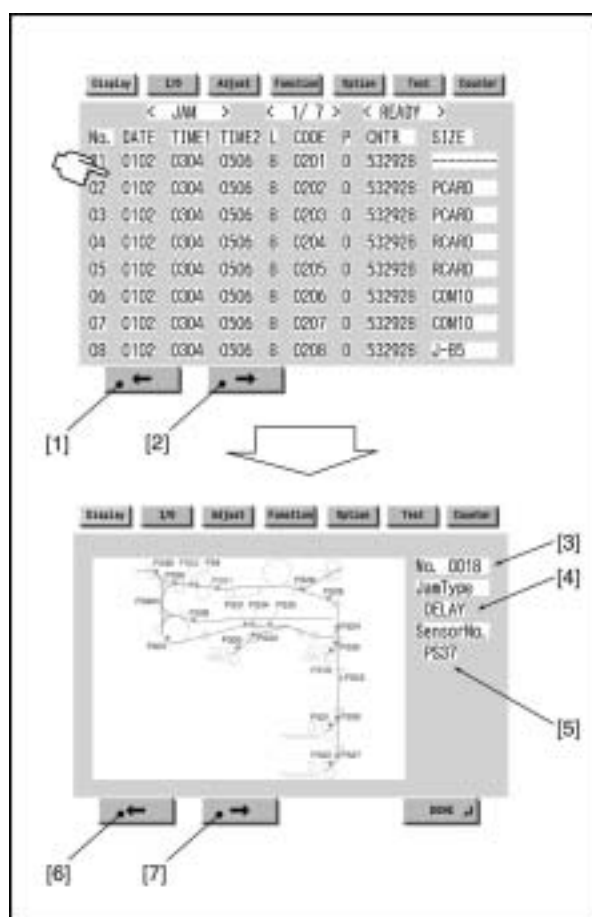
COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG		
Sub-item	Description	Level
HUM	indicates the machine inside humidity (environment sensor); in % RH	1
ABS-HUM	indicates the moisture content (environment sensor); in g	1
FIX-U	fixing roller middle temperature (main thermistor, THM1) indicates the temperature of the middle of the fixing roller. between 0 and 255 deg C, in increments of 1 deg C	1
FIX-UE	fixing roller edge temperature (sub thermistor, THM2) indicates the temperature of the edge of the fixing roller. between 0 and 255 deg C, in increments of 1 deg C	1
FIX-SHTR	fixing roller end temperature (shutter thermistor, THM3) indicates the temperature of the edge of the fixing roller. between 0 and 255 deg C.	1
CAP-VOL	indicates the voltage level of the charger unit [target product: only iR5075] settings range: 0 to 30 (unit: V) The setting for the product not targeted is "---".	1

<CST-ST>

T-5-4

COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-ST		
Sub-item	Description	Level
WIDTH-C3	indicates the width of paper in cassette 3 in terms of paper size; in mm.	2
WIDTH-C4	indicates the width of paper in cassette 4 in terms of paper size; in mm.	2
WIDTH-MF	indicates the width of paper in the manual feed tray; in mm.	2

<JAM>



F-5-1

Touch the appropriate notation for details.

[1] To go to the previous page.

[2] To go to the next page.

[3] To find out the order of jams.

[4] To find out the type of jam.

[5] To find the sensor in question.

[6] To go to the previous Jam screen.

[7] To go to the next Jam screen.

<No.> Indicates the order of jams; 1 through 50 (the higher the number, the older the jam).

<DATE> indicates the date of occurrence of the jam in question.

<TIME1> indicates the time of occurrence of the jam in question.

<TIME2> indicates the time of jam recovery.

<L> indicates the location of the jam in question; 0 to 2 (0: copier; 1: feeder; 2: finisher).

<CODE> indicates the jam code in question.

<P> indicates the source of paper.

- 1: cassette 1
- 2: cassette 2
- 3: cassette 3
- 4: cassette 4
- 5: side paper deck
- 6: manual feed tray
- 7: duplexing assembly

<CNTR> indicates the reading of the soft counter used for the source of paper.

<SIZE> indicates the size of paper.

<ERR>

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	L	P
01							
02	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00
03	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00
04	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00
05	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00
06	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00
07	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00
08	0102	0304	0506	E07D8	090A	C	00

F-5-2

<No.> indicates how recent the error in question is.

1 to 50 (the higher the number, the older the error)

<DATE> indicates the date of occurrence of the error in question.

<TIME1> indicates the time of occurrence of the error in question.

<TIME2> indicates the error recovery time.

<CODE> indicates the error code in question.

<DTL> indicates the detail code of the error in question. (if none, '0000')

<L> indicates the location of the error in question.

- 0: main controller
- 1: DADF
- 2: finisher
- 3: not used
- 4: reader unit
- 5: printer unit
- 6: PDL board
- 7: fax board

<P> not used

<HV-ST>

T-5-5

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PRIMARY	primary charging current; in uA	1
PRE-TR	pre-transfer (post) current; in uA	1
TR	transfer current (1st side); in uA	1
SP	separation current (1st side); in uA	1
BIAS	developing bias output value DC component; in V	1
SP-N2	separation current (2nd side); in uA	1
TR-N2	transfer current (2nd side); in uA	1

<CCD>

T-5-6

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TARGET-G	indicates the shading target value of green.	2
GAIN-OG	indicates the gain level adjustment value of green for CCD odd-numbered bits.	2
GAIN-EG	indicates the gain level adjustment value of green for CCD even-numbered bits.	2
GAIN-OR	indicates the gain level adjustment value of red for CCD odd-numbered bits.	2
GAIN-ER	indicates the gain level adjustment value of red for CCD even-numbered bits.	2

<DPOT>

T-5-7

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DPOT-K	COPIER>FUNCTION>DPC>OFST potential reflecting the value after execution; in V	1
VL1T	light-area potential target value; in V	1
VL1M	light-area potential measurement value; in V	1
VL2M	light-area potential measurement value for developing bias; in V	1
VDT	dark-area potential target value; in V	1
VDM	dark-area potential measurement value; in V	1
VL2M-P	light-area potential measurement value for developing bias for printer image; in V	1
VL1M-P	light-area potential measurement value for printer image; in V	1
VL1T-P	light-area potential target value for printer image; in V	1
VDM-P	light-area potential measurement value for printer image; in V	1
VDT-P	dark-area potential target value for printer image; in V	1
LLMT-P	laser output limit check for printer: 0: normal; 1: error	2
PLMT-P	primary charging current limit value setting for printer: 0: normal; 1: error	2
LLMT	laser power limit value setting: 0: normal; 1: error	2
PLMT	primary charging current limit value setting for copier: 0: normal; 1: error	2
BIAS-P	developing bias for printer (result of potential control); in V	2
BIAS-C	developing bias for copier (result of potential control); in V	2
LPOWER-P	laser output value for printer (result of potential control)	2
LPOWER-C	laser output value for copier (result of potential control)	2
PRIM-P	primary charging current value for printer (result of potential control); in uA	2
PRIM-C	primary charging current value for copier (result of potential control); in uA	2

<SENSOR>

T-5-8

COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DOC-SZ	indicates the size of the original identified by the original size sensor.	2

<MISC>

T-5-9

COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC		
Sub-item	Description	Level
LPOWER	indicates the laser intensity (real-time)	2

<ALARM-2>

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	CNTR
01						
02						
03						
04						
05						
06						
07						
08						

F-5-3

<No.> indicates the order of alarm occurrence; between 1 and 50 (the higher the number, the older the alarm)

<DATE> date of occurrence of the alarm in question

<TIME1> time of occurrence of the alarm in question

<TIME2> time of alarm recovery

<CODE> code of alarm location and alarm code

<DTL> alarm detail code

<CNTR> reading of the total counter at time of alarm occurrence

<ENVRNT>

- Environment Indication

The readings of the environment sensor and the fixing thermistor (main) are indicated as a history of changes in the following: machine inside temperature (deg C), humidity (%), fixing roller surface (middle; deg C).

No.	DATE	TIME	D+e	E+%	F+e
001	0101	0000	0000	0000	0000
002	0201	0000	0000	0000	0000
003	0301	0000	0000	0000	0000
004	0401	0000	0000	0000	0000
005	0501	0000	0000	0000	0000
006	0601	0000	0000	0000	0000
007	0701	0000	0000	0000	0000
008	0801	0000	0000	0000	0000

F-5-4

T-5-10

Item	Description
No.	order of data acquisition (the higher the number, the older the data)
DATE	date of data acquisition
TIME	time of data acquisition
D + deg C	machine inside temperature
E + %	machine inside humidity
F + deg C	fixing roller surface (middle) temperature

Memo:

The interval at which data is acquired may be changed using the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>ENVP-IN.

5.1.2 FEEDER**5.1.2.1 FEEDER List**

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-11

COPIER > FEEDER > DISPLAY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
FEEDSIZE	indicates the size of the original identified by the feeder.	1
TRY-WIDE	indicates the distance between original width detecting slides (detecting the width of paper; 0.1 mm). indicates the distance between the slides used to detect the width of originals in the ADF original tray (between 2 points).	1
SPSN-LMN	post-separation sensor light emission level indicates the manual adjustment value (light-emission voltage) of the post-separation sensor. optimum range: 179 or lower	1
SPSN-RCV	post-separation sensor light reception level indicates the light reception value (of the post-separation sensor after manual adjustment). optimum range: paper present: 154 or lower paper absent: 179 or higher	1
RDSN-LMN	read sensor light emission level indicates the manual adjustment value (light emission voltage) of the read sensor. optimum range: 179 or lower	1
RDSN-RCV	read sensor light reception level indicates the light reception level of the read sensor after manual adjustment. optimum range: paper present: 154 or lower paper absent: 179 or higher	1
DRSN-LMN	delivery reversal sensor light emission level indicates the manual adjustment value (light emission voltage) of the delivery reversal sensor. optimum range: 905 or lower	1
DRSN-RCV	delivery reversal sensor light reception sensor level indicates the light reception voltage of the delivery reversal sensor after manual adjustment. optimum range: paper present: 154 or lower paper absent: 179 or higher	1

5.2 I/O (I/O Display Mode)

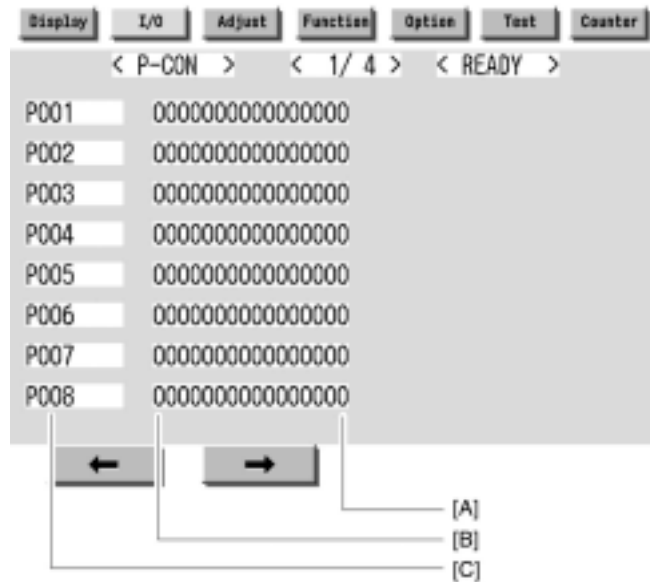
5.2.1 Outline

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The following provides a guide to the screen appearing in response to the following: COPIER>I/O.



F-5-5



F-5-6

[A] bit 0
[B] bit 15
[C] address

5.2.2 R-CON

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-12

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P001	0	delivery motor CLK	
	1	DDIS IF (OPT00-)	0: prohibit operation
	2	DDIS IF (SPRDY)	0: permit operation
	3	DDIS IF (OPTI0)	0: active
	4	ADF pickup motor CLK	
	5	fan power supply ON signal	1: ON
	6	ADF read motor CLK	
	7	size sensor ON	1: ON

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P002	0	shift motor CLK	
	1	24V power monitor	0: normal
	2-3	not used	
	4	scanner motor CLK	
	5	13V power supply monitor	0: normal
	6	Canon Electronics switchover	0: Canon Electronics
	7	DDIS IF (SCPRDY)	0: permit operation
P003	0	DDIS serial communication (TxD)	
	1	ADF serial communication (TxD)	
	2	DDIS serial communication (RxD)	
	3	ADF serial communication (RxD)	
	4	LED control	1: ON
	5	ADF serial communication (SCK)	
	6-7	not used	
P004	0	original size detection 0	0: original present
	1	original size detection 1	0: original present
	2	original size detection 2	0: original present
	3	original size detection 3	0: original present
	4	DF connection detection	
	5	DDIS IF (SRTS)	0: permit reception
	6	scanner motor Vref output	
P005	7	not used	
	0	PC connection IF (TxD)	
	1	PC connection IF (RxD)	
	2	fan lock detection signal	0: enable
	3	DDIS IF (SCTS)	0: permit reception
P006	4-7	not used	
	0	not used	
	1	PCB check terminal	1: normal
	2	DDIS IF (OPTI1)	0: active
	3	DDIS IF (OPTO1)	0: active
	4	ADF sensor interrupt input	0: active
	5	platen cover open/closed sensor interrupt input 0	1: cover open
P007	6	HP sensor interrupt input	1: HP
	7	not used	
	0	address bus 16	
	1	address bus 17	
	2	address bus 18	
	3-4	not used	
	5	ADF pickup motor clock interrupt input	
P008	6	ADF read motor clock interrupt input	
	7	ADF reversal motor clock interrupt input	
	0	lamp ON signal	1: ON
	1	CCD drive ON signal	1: ON
	2	wait signal	0: wait
	3	L light signal	0: active
	4	H light signal	0: active
P009	5	read signal	0: active
	6	ADF serial communication (LOAD)	0: enable
	7	CPU click output	
	0	not used	
	1	shading RAM chip select	0: select
	2	work RAM chip select	0: select
	3	ASIC register chip select	0: select
P009	4	ROM chip select	0: select
	5-7	not used	

5.2.3 FEEDER

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-13

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P001	0	read sensor	0: paper present
	1	registration sensor	1: paper present
	2	delivery reversal sensor	0: paper present
	3	ADF cover open/closed sensor	0: ADF open
	4-7	not used	
P002	0	delivery motor current setting 1	
	1	deliver motor current setting 2	
	2	release motor current setting 1	
	3	release motor current setting 2	
	4	stamp solenoid drive	1: ON
	5	clutch drive	1: ON
	6	original detection LED	1: ON
	7	fan motor drive	1: ON
P003	0	pickup motor current setting CUT	
	1	feed motor current setting CUT	
	2	engagement motor current setting	
	3	feed motor mode setting	
	4	feed motor current setting 1	
	5	feed motor current setting 2	
	6	pickup motor current setting 1	
	7	pickup motor current setting 2	
P004	0	ADF cover open/closed sensor	0: ADF cover open
	1-6	not used	
	7	stamp present/absent	0: stamp present
P005	0	not used	
	1	release HP sensor	1: released
	2	delivery reversal sensor	0: paper present
	3	post-separation sensor	0: paper present
	4	LGL sensor	1: paper present
	5	AB/Inch check sensor	1: AB
	6	not used	
	7	original placement sensor	0: paper present
P006	0-7	for R&D	
P007	0-7	for R&D	
P008	0-7	for R&D	
P009	0-7	for R&D	
P010	0-7	for R&D	

5.2.4 SORTER

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-14

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P001	0	inlet feed motor phase A signal	
	1	inlet feed motor phase B signal	
	2	inlet feed motor phase A* signal	
	3	inlet feed motor phase B* signal	
	4	escape feed motor phase A signal	
	5	escape feed motor phase B signal	
	6	escape feed motor phase A* signal	
	7	escape feed motor phase B* signal	
P002	0	punch feed motor phase A signal	
	1	punch feed motor phase B signal	
	2	punch feed motor phase A* signal	
	3	punch feed motor phase B* signal	
	4	tray motor CLK signal	
	5	swing locking motor current switchover I0	0: ON
	6	swing locking motor phase A signal	
	7	swing locking motor phase B signal	

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P003	0	TxD for external source	
	1	TxD for write	
	2	RxD for external	
	3	RxD for write	
	4	punch connection detection	0: connected
	5	OUT for punch communication	0: ON
	6-7	not used	
P004	0	escape feed motor CLK (IRQ0*)	
	1	not used	
	2	saddle connection detection	0: connected
	3	upper tray FG (IRQ3*)	
	4	swing lock HP sensor	1: HP
	5	not used	
	6	front cover open/closed sensor	0: open
P005	7	not used	
	0	TxD for punch communication	
	1	RxD punch for punch communication	
	2	IN for punch communication (IRQ2*)	0: ON
P006	3-7	not used	
	1	lower tray motor LOCK	0: locked
	2	not used	
	3	lower tray motor ON	0: ON
	4	not used	
	5	motor standby signal	0: ON
	6	not used	
P007	7	not used	
	0-7	not used	
	0	lower tray area sensor 1	0: detected
	1	lower tray area sensor 2	0: detected
	2	lower tray area sensor 3	0: detected
	3	not used	
	4	punch feed motor CLK (IRQ4*)	
	5	lower tray FG (IRQ5*)	
P008	6	inlet feed motor lock input (IRQ6*)	
	7	stack edging motor clock input (IRQ7*)	
	0	inlet sensor	1: paper present
	1	lower tray paper surface sensor	0: paper present
	2	1700-sheet paper surface sensor	0: paper present
	3	upper tray interlock	1: error
	4	upper tray area sensor 1	0: detected
	5	upper tray area sensor 2	0: detected
P009	6	upper tray area sensor 3	0: detected
	7	not used	
	0	inlet feed motor current switch I1	0: ON
	1	inlet feed motor current switch I0	0: ON
	2	punch feed motor current switch I1	0: ON
	3	punch feed motor current switch I0	0: ON
	4	punch feed motor standby	0: ON
	5	escape feed motor I0	0: ON
P010	6	escape feed motor I1	0: ON
	7	escape feed motor standby	0: ON
	0	upper tray motor CW/CCW	1: CCW/0: CW
	1	upper tray motor ON	0: ON
	2	upper tray motor LOCK	0: locked
	3	solenoid ON signal	0: ON
	4-5	not used	
	6	lower tray motor CW/CCW	1: CCW/0: CW
P011	7	delivery path sensor	1: paper present
	0	inlet roller shift solenoid	1: ON
	1	buffer roller shift solenoid	1: ON
	2	expansion IO chip select signal (CS2*)	
	3	IPC chip select (CS3*)	
P012	4-7	not used	

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P013	0	gear change motor phase A signal	
	1	gear change motor phase B signal	
	2	gear change motor current switch I0	0: ON
	3	gear change motor current switch I1	0: ON
	4	escape flapper solenoid ON signal	1: ON
	5	EEPROM output signal	
	6	EEPROM enable signal	
	7	EEPROMCLK	
P014	0	EEPROM input signal	
	1	aligning plate FHP sensor	1: HP
	2	aligning plate RHP sensor	1: HP
	3	handling tray paper sensor	1: paper present
	4	trailing edge assist HP sensor	1: HP
	5	for machine download	
	6-7	not used	
P015	0	aligning plate R motor phase A signal	
	1	aligning plate R motor phase B signal	
	2	aligning pate R motor current switch I0	0: ON
	3-7	not used	
P016	0	aligning plate F motor phase A signal	
	1	aligning plate F motor phase B signal	
	2	aligning plate F motor current switch I0	0: ON
	3-7	not used	
P017	0	trailing edge assist motor phase A signal	
	1	trailing edge assist motor phase B signal	
	2	trailing edge assist motor current switch I0	0: ON
	3	trailing edge assist motor current switch I1	0: ON
	4	trailing edge assist motor standby signal	0: ON
	5-7	not used	
P018	0	stapler shift motor standby signal	0: ON
	1	stapler motor direction switch CCW	1: ON
	2	stapler motor direction switch CW	1: ON
	3	not used	
	4	stapler shift motor phase A signal	
	5	stapler shift motor phase B signal	
	6-7	not used	
P019	0	escape tray path sensor	1: paper present
	1	escape tray full sensor	1: full
	2	stapler HP detection	1: HP
	3	stapler READY	1: ready
	4	stapler LS	1: staple present
	5	escape feed upper cover sensor	1: close
	6	stapler shift HP sensor	1: HP
	7	stapler alignment interference sensor	1: interference
P020	0	stapler shift motor current switch I0	0: ON
	1	stapler shift motor current switch I1	0: ON
	2	No. 1 delivery motor shift solenoid	1: ON
	3	buffer trailing edge retaining solenoid	1: ON
	4	stack edging lower roller clutch	1: ON
	5	shutter open/close clutch	1: ON
	6	stack edging motor current switch I1	0: ON
	7	stack edging motor current switch I0	0: ON
P021	0	stack feeding motor phase A signal	
	1	stack edging motor phase B signal	
	2	stack feeding motor phase A* signal	
	3	stack edging motor phase B* signal	
	4	upper tray paper surface sensor	1: paper present
	5	stapler interlock	1: open
	6	shutter HP sensor	1: HP
	7	swing guide interlock	1: open

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P022	0	DIPSW_8	0: ON
	1	DIPSW_7	0: ON
	2	DIPSW_6	0: ON
	3	DIPSW_5	0: ON
	4	DIPSW_4	0: ON
	5	DIPSW_3	0: ON
	6	DIPSW_2	0: ON
	7	DIPSW_1	0: ON
P023	0	PUSHSW1	0: ON
	1	PUSHSW2	0: ON
	2	PUSHSW	0: ON
	3	upper tray paper sensor	0: paper present
	4	lower tray paper sensor	0: paper present
	5	24V detection	0: detected
	6	front cover interlock	1: open
	7	fan error detection	0: detected
P024	0	fan ON signal	1: ON
	1	LED1	0: ON
	2	LED2	0: ON
	3	LED3	0: ON
	4	X4-POWER-ON signal	0: ON
	5-7	not used	
P025	0	saddle guide motor phase A signal	
	1	saddle guide motor phase B signal	
	2	saddle guide motor current switch I0	0: ON
	3	saddle feed motor current switch I0	0: ON
	4	saddle feed motor phase A signal	
	5	saddle feed motor phase B signal	
	6	saddle feed motor phase A* signal	
	7	saddle feed motor phase B* signal	
P026	0	saddle alignment motor phase A signal	
	1	saddle alignment motor phase B signal	
	2	saddle alignment motor current switch I0	0: ON
	3	saddle paper positioning motor current switch I0	0: ON
	4	saddle paper positioning motor phase A signal	
	5	saddle paper position motor phase B signal	
	6	solenoid PWM	
	7	saddle folding motor PWM	
P027	0	trimmer PICKUP-TxD	
	1	TxD for write	
	2	trimmer CPU-RxD	
	3	RxD for write	
	4	trimmer OUT	0: ON
	5	trimmer connection detection	0: detected
	6-7	not used	
P028	0	saddle front stapling current detection	1: detected
	1	saddle rear stapling current detection	1: detected
	2	saddle delivery door connection detection	1: detected
	3-5	not used	
	6	saddle stapler unit connection detection	1: detected
	7	not used	
P029	0	saddle rear staple detecting switch	0: detected
	1	saddle front staple detecting switch	0: detected
	2	saddle front stapler CCW	0: ON
	3	stapler feed motor standby	0: ON
	4-7	not used	
P030	0-1	not used	
	2	saddle folding motor FWD (CW)	1: ON
	3	saddle folding motor RV (CCW)	1: ON
	4	saddle folding CLK sensor (IRQ0*)	
	5	saddle butting CLK sensor (IRQ1*)	
	6	saddle rear stapler HP sensor (IRQ2*)	1: HP
	7	saddle front stapler HP sensor (IRQ3*)	1: HP

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P031	0	saddle position HP sensor	0: HP
	1	saddle guide HP sensor	1: HP
	2	inlet cover sensor	1: close
	3	saddle stapler unit sensor	0: detected
	4	saddle butting HP sensor (IRQ4*)	1: HP
	5	saddle butting TOP sensor (IRQ5*)	1: butting position
	6	trimmer IN (IRQ6*)	0: ON
	7	saddle feed motor CLK (IRQ7*)	
P032	0	saddle tray paper sensor	0: paper present
	1	positioning plate paper sensor	0: paper present
	2	saddle crescent roller sensor	0: HP
	3	saddle delivery sensor	0: paper present
	4	saddle trailing edge sensor 1	1: detected
	5	saddle trailing edge sensor 2	1: detected
	6	saddle trailing edge sensor 3	1: detected
	7	saddle path sensor	1: detected
P033	0	saddle butting motor EN	1: ON
	1	saddle butting motor FWD (CW)	1: ON
	2	saddle butting motor RV (CCW)	1: ON
	3	saddle folding HP sensor	0: HP
	4	not used	
	5	saddle delivery sensor	0: paper present
	6	saddle aligning plate HP sensor	0: HP
	7	not used	
P034	0	saddle inlet solenoid	1: ON
	1	saddle No. 1 flapper solenoid	1: ON
	2	saddle No. 2 flapper solenoid	1: ON
	3	saddle pickup solenoid	1: ON
	4-6	not used	
	7	saddle inlet sensor	1: detected
P035	0	saddle rear stapler CW (CW)	0: ON
	1	saddle rear stapler CCW (CCW)	0: ON
	2	saddle front stapler CW (CW)	0: ON
	3	chip select (CS1*)	
	4-7	not used	
P036	0	DIPSW_1	0: ON
	1	DIPSW_2	0: ON
	2	DIPSW_3	0: ON
	3	DIPSW_4	0: ON
	4	DIPSW_5	0: ON
	5	DIPSW_6	0: ON
	6	DIPSW_7	0: ON
	7	DIPSW_8	0: ON
P037	0	not used	
	1	PUSHSW1	0: ON
	2	5V detection signal	0: detected
	3	24V detection signal	0: detected
	4	for revision control	
	5	for revision control	
	6	for revision control	
	7	for revision control	
P038	0	download ON signal	1: ON
	1	not used	
	4	LED3	0: ON
	5	LED2	0: ON
	6	LED1	0: ON
	7	power-on signal	0: ON
P039	0	DIPSW1	0: ON
	1	DIPSW2	0: ON
	2	DIPSW3	0: ON
	3	not used	
	4	PCH-OUT	
	5	trailing edge sensor	1: ON
	6	punch encoder lock	
	7	punch HP sensor	0: detected

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P040	0	PCH-IN	
	1	RxD	
	2	TxD	
	3-7	not used	
P041	0	EEPROM-IN	
	1	EEPROM-OUT	
	2	EEPROM-CLK	
	3	EEPROM-CS	
	4	horizontal registration HP sensor	1: ON
	5	horizontal registration motor STB	0: ON
	6	punch motor CCW	0: ON
	7	punch motor CW	0: ON
P042	0-3	not used	
	4	DIPSW4	0: ON
	5	horizontal registration motor CUR	0: ON
	6	PWM	
	7	not used	
P043	0	LED1	0: ON
	1	horizontal registration motor INA	
	2	horizontal registration motor INB	
	3	LED2	0: ON
	4	front cover sensor	0: close
	5	BOOTMODE	
	6	PUSHSW2	0: ON
	7	PUSHSW1	0: ON
P044	0-4	not used	
	5	upper cover sensor	1: open
	6-7	not used	
P045	ADDR A	not used	
P046	ADDR B	not used	
P047	AD0	trailing edge sensor	
P048	AD1	B5R sensor	
P049	AD2	A4R sensor	
P050	AD3	B4 sensor	
P051	AD6	dust sensor	
P052	AD7	A3 sensor	

5.2.5 MN-CON

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

not used

5.2.6 P-CON

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-15

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P001	0	manual feed paper sensor signal	0: paper present
	1	registration paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	2	right deck retry sensor signal	1: paper present
	3	cassette 3 paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	4	vertical path 3 paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	5	cassette 4 paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	6	vertical path 4 paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	7	right deck paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	8	vertical path 1 paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	9	left deck paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	10	vertical path 2 paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	11	outside delivery sensor signal	1: paper present
	12	inside delivery paper sensor signal	0: paper present
	13	not used	
	14	claw jam sensor signal	0: paper present
	15	left deck pull-off detection signal	1: paper present

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P002	0	cassette 3 retry sensor signal	1: paper present
	1	cassette 4 retry sensor signal	1: paper present
	2	left deck retry sensor signal	1: paper present
	3	reversal sensor 1 signal	1: paper present
	4	right deck limit sensor	1: paper present
	5	duplexing pre-registration signal	1: paper present
	6	duplexing horizontal registration sensor signal	0: paper present
	7	reversal sensor 2 signal	1: paper present
	8	write check sensor signal	1: paper present
	9	developing assembly toner sensor signal	0: toner low
	10	hopper toner sensor signal	0: toner low
	11	duplexing paper sensor signal	1: paper present
	12	fixing web length detection signal	1: web absent
	13	fixing output sensor signal	0: paper present
	14	shutter HP signal	0: HP/set position
	15	collecting toner feedscrew signal	0: lock
P003	0	developing clutch ON signal	1:ON
	1	left deck pull-off clutch ON signal	1:ON
	2	manual feed pickup clutch ON signal	1:ON
	3	AKM_EX_CLK_ENABLE signal	
	4	roller bias ON signal	0:ON
	5	developing AC bias ON signal	0:ON
	6	high-voltage high-humidity switchover signal	0:ON
	7	high-voltage AC ON signal	0:ON
	8	charger unit operation mode 1	
	9	not used	
	10	charger unit operation mode 2	
	11	not used	
	12	high-voltage remote signal	0:ON
	13	EEPROM select signal 1	1:ON
	14	EEPROM select signal 2	1:ON
	15	EEPROM select signal 3	1:ON
P004	0	cassette 3 size detection signal 0	
	1	cassette 3 size detection signal 1	
	2	cassette 4 size detection signal 0	
	3	cassette 4 size detection signal 1	
	4	fixing shutter thermistor overheating detection signal	1: overheating
	5	fixing sub thermistor overheating detection signal	1: overheating
	6	fixing main thermistor overheating detection signal	1: overheating
	7	accessories power supply fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	8	not used	
	9	HVT cooling fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	10	circulation duct fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	11	hopper toner sensor connection detection signal	0: connected
	12	developing toner sensor connection detection signal	0: connected
	13	shutter set detection signal	0:HP
	14	relay OFF detection signal	1:OFF
	15	fixing inlet guide solenoid connection detection signal	1: not connected
P005	0	separation fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	1	primary charging cooling fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	2	DC power supply fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	3	heat discharge fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	4	fixing heater power supply fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	5	controller fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	6	duplexing feed fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	7	curl-removing fan stop detection signal	1: stop
	8	right deck paper level sensor (upper) signal	1: paper present
	9	left deck paper level sensor (upper) signal	1: paper present
	10	duplexing unit detection signal	0: present
	11	fixing/feed unit detection signal	0: present
	12	right deck paper level sensor (lower) signal	1: paper present
	13	left deck paper level sensor (lower) signal	1: paper present
	14	charger unit operation status 1	
	15	fixing web solenoid connection detection signal	1: not connected

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P006	0	fixing motor lock detection signal	1: locked
	1-6	not used	
	7	hopper MERR	1: error
	8	bottle MERR	1: error
	9	not used	
	10	bottle motor connection detection signal	0: connected
	11	shift tray full sensor signal	0: full
	12	shift tray paper sensor signal	0: paper present
	13	shift tray HP sensor L signal	1:HP
	14	shift tray HP sensor R signal	1:HP
	15	shift tray connector detection signal	0: connected
P007	0-7	not used	
	8	fixing inlet sensor signal	1: paper present
	9	delivery jam sensor signal	1: jam
	10	IH-PID0	0:ON
	11	IH-PID1	0:ON
	12	high-voltage separation error signal	0: error
	13	high-voltage transfer error signal	0: error
	14	high-voltage primary charging error signal	0: error
	15	12V monitor signal	0:12V ON
P008	0	manual feed door open/closed sensor signal	0: line
	1	right deck paper level sensor signal	1: paper present
	2	right deck pull-off sensor signal	1: paper present
	3	left deck paper level sensor signal	1: paper present
	4	left deck limit sensor signal	1: paper present
	5	cassette 3 paper level sensor signal	1: paper present
	6	cassette 4 paper level sensor signal	1: paper present
	7	not used	
	8	cassette 3 open/closed sensor signal	0: open
	9	cassette 4 open/closed sensor signal	0: open
	10	registration clutch ON signal	0:ON
	11	right deck open/closed sensor signal	0: open
	12	left deck open/closed signal	0: open
	13	lower right door open/closed sensor signal	0: open
	14	bottle cover sensor signal	0: open
	15	front door open/closed sensor signal	1: open
P009	0	shift tray connection detection signal	1: not connected
	1	shift tray motor (CCW) signal	0:ON
	2	shift tray motor (CW) signal	0:ON
	3	right deck pickup solenoid ON signal	0:ON
	4	left deck solenoid ON signal	1:ON
	5	cassette 3 solenoid ON signal	1:ON
	6	cassette 4 solenoid ON signal	1:ON
	7	manual feed holding plate release solenoid ON signal	1:ON
	8	motor enable signal	1:ENABLE
	9	reversing flapper 1 solenoid ON signal	1:ON
	10	reversing flapper 2 solenoid ON signal	0:ON
	11	fixing inlet guide solenoid ON signal (return)	1: ON (guide at low)
	12	fixing inlet guide solenoid ON signal (suction)	1: ON (guide at up)
	13	fixing web solenoid ON signal	1:ON
	14	drum heater relay SET signal	1:ON
	15	drum heater delay RESET signal	1:ON
P010	0	right deck lifter motor ON signal	0:ON
	1	left deck lifter motor ON signal	0:ON
	2	primary charging wire cleaning motor (CCW) signal	1:ON
	3	primary charging wire cleaning motor (CW) signal	1:ON
	4	pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor (CCW) signal	1:ON
	5	pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor (CW) signal	1:ON
	6	transfer/separation charging wire cleaning motor (CCW) signal	1:ON
	7	transfer/separation charging wire cleaning motor (CW) signal	1:ON

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P011	0	drum motor ON signal	0:ON
	1	main motor ON signal	0:ON
	2	cassette heater ON signal	0:ON
	3	not used	
	4	sensor 5V power supply	
	5	bottle stirring motor ON signal	0:ON
	6	hopper stirring motor 2 ON signal	0: forward/1: reverse
	7	circulation duct fan (half-speed) ON signal	1: forward/0: reverse
P012	0	circulation duct fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	1	circulation duct fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	2	drum heater ON signal	0:ON
	3	power supply fan ON signal	0:ON
	4-5	not used	
	6	cassette 4 lifter motor ON signal	0:ON
	7	cassette 3 lifter motor ON signal	0:ON
P013	0	separation feed fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	1	separation feed fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	2	primary charging cooling fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	3	primary charging cooling fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	4	HVT cooling fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	5	HVT cooling fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	6	lower fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	7	lower fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
P014	0	IH power supply cooling fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	1	IH power supply cooling fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	2	controller cooling fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	3	controller cooling fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	4	not used	
	5	duplexing feed fan (full-speed) ON signal	0:ON
	6	curl-removing fan (half-speed)	1:ON
	7	curl-removing fan (full-speed)	1:ON
P015	0	relay shut OFF signal	1:OFF
	1	accessories power supply fan (half-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	2	accessories power supply fan (full-speed) ON signal	1:ON
	3	counter (total)	1:ON
	4	not used	
	5	pre-exposure LED ON signal	1:ON
	6	potential sensor ON signal	1:ON
	7	12V release signal	1:ON
P016	0	DDI-PPRDY	
	1	DDI-CTS	
	2	DDI-PO0	
	3	DDI-PO1	
	4	DDI-PO2	
	5	DDI-PO3	
	6	DDI-PO4	
	7	DDI-PO5	
P017	0	DDI-CPRDY	
	1	DDI-PRSST	
	2	DDI-RST	
	3	DDI-PI0	
	4	not used	
	5	DDI-PI2	
	6	DDI-PI3	
	7	DDI-PI4	
P018	0	jam detection port	1: jam
	1	IMGON_FLG	
	2-7	not used	

Address	bit	Description	Remarks
P019	0	not used	
	1	reversal motor clock signal	
	2-4	not used	
	5	duplexing left feed motor clock signal	
	6	not used	
	7	delivery motor clock signal	
P020	0	registration clutch ON signal	
	1-4	not used	
	5	pre-registration motor clock signal	
	6	not used	
	7	duplexing right feed motor clock signal	
P021	0	not used	
	1	DDI-TxD	
	2	not used	
	3	DDI-RxD	
	4	DDI-POWER	
	5	DDI-SCNST	
	6-7	not used	
P022	0-7	not used	
P023	0	FIN-RESET	
	1	FIN-MODE	
	2-7	not used	
P024	0-4	not used	
	5	pulse count INT	
	6	DMA-END-INT	
	7	DMA-REQ-INT	
P025	0	deck open detecting switch signal	0: closed
	1	deck paper absent sensor signal	1: paper present
	2	deck lifter upper limit sensor signal	1: upper limit
	3	deck pickup sensor signal	1: paper present
	4	deck feed sensor signal	1: paper present
	5	deck pickup clutch ON signal	1:ON
	6	not used	
P026	7	deck paper supply position sensor signal	1:ON
	0	deck paper level sensor signal	1: paper present
	1	deck lifter lower limit detection signal	1: lower limit
	2	deck set sensor signal	1: connected
	3	deck open sensor signal	1: closed
	4	deck ID1	1: connected
	5	deck ID2	0: connected
	6	not used	
P027	7	switchover of the large/small deck	
	0	deck open LED ON signal	1:ON
	1	deck pickup roller release solenoid drive signal	1:ON
	2	not used	
	3	deck pickup clutch drive signal	1:ON
	4-5	not used	
	6	deck main motor drive signal	1:ON
P028	7	deck lifter motor drive signal	1:ON
	0	deck lifer lower limit detection signal	1:ON
	1	deck open solenoid	1:ON
	2	deck main motor constant current setting	1:ON
	3-7	not used	

5.3 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode)

5.3.1 COPIER

5.3.1.1 COPIER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<AE>

T-5-16

COPIER > ADJUST > AE		
Sub-item	Description	Level
AE-TBL	adjustment range: 1 to 9 (default: 5) - to obtain darker characters, increase the setting. - to obtain lighter characters, decrease the setting. If you have initialized the RAM on the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated on the service label.	1

<ADJ-XY>

T-5-17

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
	Use it to adjust the image read start position. - If you have initialized the RAM on the reader controller PCB or replaced the PCB, enter the value indicated on the service label. - If you have changed the setting of this item, record the new setting on the service label.	
ADJ-X	Use it to adjust the image read start position (X direction). adjustment range: 1 to 100 (default: 26)	1
ADJ-Y	Use it to adjust the image read start position (Y direction). adjustment range: 200 to 500 (default: 352)	1
ADJ-Y-DF	Use it to adjust the main scanning position for feeder mode. adjustment range: 100 to 400 (default: 248)	1
STRD_POS	Use it to adjust the CCD read position for DF stream reading mode. adjustment range: 1 to 200 (default: 100)	1
ADJ-X-MG	Fine adjustment of magnification in sub scanning direction at copyboard reading adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)(unit: 0.01%)	1
ADJ-Y-DF2	Adjustment of the position on the backside in main scanning direction at simultaneous double-sided reading adjustment range: 21 to 106 (default: 76)	1

<CCD>

T-5-18

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SH-TRGT	Use it to enter the white level target value for shading correction. adjustment range: 1 to 2047 (default: 1136)	1
DFTAR-G	Use it to adjust the shading target value for green for DF mode. adjustment range: 1 to 2047 (default: 1189)	1
MTF-M1	Setting value of front/back matching MTF in main scanning direction (front). adjustment range: 20 to 80 (default: 50)	1
MTF-M2	Setting value of front/back matching MTF in main scanning direction (center). adjustment range: 20 to 80 (default: 50)	1
MTF-M3	Setting value of front/back matching MTF in main scanning direction (back). adjustment range: 20 to 80 (default: 50)	1
MTF-S1	Setting value of front/back matching MTF in sub scanning direction. adjustment range: 20 to 80 (default: 50)	1
DFCH2G2	Setting of linearity characteristic data value of No. 2 data (Green) of DF composite chart for CCD. adjustment range: 1 to 2550 (default: 2000)	1
DFCH2G10	Setting of linearity characteristic data value of No. 10 data (Green) of DF composite chart for CCD. adjustment range: 0 to 2550 (default: 0)	1
DFCH-G10	Setting of linearity characteristic data value of No. 10 data (Green) of DF composite chart for CIS. adjustment range: 0 to 2550 (default: 0)	1
DFCH-G2	Setting of linearity characteristic data value of No. 2 data (Green) of DF composite chart for CIS. adjustment range: 1 to 2550 (default: 2000)	1

<LASER>

T-5-19

COPIER > ADJUST > LASER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PVE-OFST	Use it to adjust the laser write start position. adjustment range: -300 to 300	1
POWER	Use it to adjust the laser power (for non-potential control). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1

<DEVELOP>

T-5-20

COPIER > ADJUST > DEVELOP		
Sub-item	Description	Level
BIAS	Use it to adjust the developing bias (for non-potential control). adjustment range: 0 to 600 (default: 180)	1
HVT-DE	Use it to enter an offset value for the high-voltage unit. adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)	1
D-HV-DE	Use it to enter the offset value for the high-voltage D/A output for the DC controller PCB. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)	1
TSPLY-ADJ	Use it to adjust the toner supply distribution (axial direction) for the developing assembly. adjustment range: 1 to 5 (default: 3)	2

<DENS>

T-5-21

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DENS-ADJ	Use it to adjust the density of images (copier/printer). Use it to correct the F-value table in the event of fading in a high-density area or fogging in an image. adjustment range: 1 to 9 (default: 5) - to decrease fading, increase the value. - to decrease fogging, decrease the value. If you have initialized the RAM on the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated on the service label.	1

<BLANK>

T-5-22

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK		
Sub-item	Description	Level
BLANK-T	Use it to enter the image leading edge non-image width. adjustment range: 1 to 500 (default: 94) If you have initialized the RAM on the DC controller PCB or replaced the PCB, enter the value indicated on the service label.	1
BLANK-B	Use it to enter the image trailing edge non-image width. adjustment range: 0 to 2362 (default: 47) If you have initialized the RAM on the DC controller PCB or replaced the PCB, enter the value indicated on the service label.	1

<V-CONT>

T-5-23

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT		
Sub-item	Description	Level
EPOTOFST	Use it to enter the potential offset value. adjustment range: 0 to 255 (default: 0)	1
VL-OFST	Use it to enter the light-area target potential offset adjustment value. adjustment range: -5 to 5 (default: 0)	1
VD-OFST	Use it to enter the dark-area target potential offset adjustment value. adjustment range: -5 to 5 (default: 0)	1
DE-OFS-P	Use it to enter the offset value of the back contrast for printer images. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)	1
VD-OFS-P	Use it to enter the target VD offset value for printer images. adjustment range: -5 to 5 (default: 0)	1
DE-OFST	Use it to enter the target D offset value for copier images. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)	1
VL-OFS-P	Use it to enter the target VL offset value for printer images. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)	1

<HV-PRI>

T-5-24

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PRIMARY	Use it to enter the current setting of the primary charging assembly. settings range: 0 to 1400 (default: 771)	1

<HV-TR>

T-5-25

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TR-N1	Use it to adjust the output level of the 1st side of plain paper for an N/N environment. adjustment range: 100 to 400 (default: 380)	1
TR-N2	Use it to adjust the output level of the 2nd side for an N/N environment. adjustment range: 100 to 400 (default: 310)	1
PRE-TR	Use it to adjust the current level of the pre-transfer charging assembly. adjustment range: -300 to 0 (default: -70)	1
HVT-TR	Use it to enter the transfer charging assembly high-voltage offset value for the high-voltage unit. adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)	1
H-PRE-TR	Use it to enter the pre-transfer charging assembly high-voltage offset value for the high-voltage unit. adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)	1
D-PRE-TR	Use it to enter the pre-transfer charging assembly high-voltage offset value for the DC controller PCB. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)	1
D-HV-TR	Use it to enter the transfer charging assembly high-voltage offset value for the DC controller PCB. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (default: 0)	1

<HV-SP>

T-5-26

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-SP		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SP-N1	Use it to adjust the output level for the 1st side of plain paper for an N/N environment. adjustment range: -500 to 100 (iR5075 default: -240) (iR5055/5065 default: -175)	1
SP-N2	Use it to adjust the output level for the 2nd side of plain paper for an N/N environment. adjustment range: -500 to 100 (iR5075 default: -120) (iR5055/5065 default: -100)	1
HVT-SP	Use it to enter the separation charging assembly high-voltage offset level for the high-voltage unit. adjustment range: -100 to 100	1
D-HV-SP	Use it to enter the separation charging assembly high-voltage offset value for the DC controller PCB. adjustment range: -50 to 50	1

<FEED-ADJ>

T-5-27

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ		
Sub-item	Description	Level
REGIST	Use it to adjust the leading edge registration. adjustment range: -50 to 50	1
ADJ-REFE	Use it to adjust the horizontal registration for duplex mode. adjustment range: -50 to 50	1
RG-MF	Use it to adjust the registration for manual pickup. adjustment range: -50 to 50	1

<CST-ADJ>

T-5-28

COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ		
Sub-item	Description	Level
C3-STMTR	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for cassette 3 (STMTR). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C3-A4R	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for cassette 3 (A4R). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C4-STMTR	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for cassette 4 (STMTR). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C4-A4R	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for cassette 4 (A4R). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1

COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ		
Sub-item	Description	Level
MF-A4R	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for the manual feed tray (A4R). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
MF-A6R	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for the manual feed tray (A6R). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
MF-A4	Use it to enter the paper width basic value for the manual feed tray (A4). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C3-LVOL	Use it to enter the capacity of the cassette 3 (50 sheets). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C3-HVOL	Use it to enter the capacity of the cassette 3 (275 sheets). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C4-LVOL	Use it to enter the capacity of the cassette 4 (50 sheets). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1
C4-HVOL	Use it to adjust the capacity of the cassette 4 (275 sheets). adjustment range: 0 to 255	1

<MISC>

T-5-29

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC		
Sub-item	Description	Level
ATM	Use it to make settings related to the atmospheric pressure of the site of installation. settings range: 0 to 2 (default: 0) 0: 1 to 0.75 atm (up to elevation of 2500 m) 1: 0.75 to 0.70 atm (elevation between 2500 and 300 m) 2: 0.70 to 0.65 atm (elevation between 300 and 3500 m)	1

5.3.2 FEEDER

5.3.2.1 FEEDER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-30

COPIER > FEEDER > ADJUST		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DOCST	Use it to adjust the original image leading edge position. - a higher setting will delay the timing for the image leading edge. adjustment range: -50 to 50 (unit: 0.1 mm)	1
LA-SPEED	Use it to adjust the original feed speed in feeder stream reading mode. - a higher setting will increase the speed (i.e., contracts the image). adjustment range: -30 to 30 (unit: 0.1%)	1
DOCST2	Adjustment of VYSNC timing on the backside of the feeder at simultaneous double-sided reading. adjustment range: -50 to 50 [default: 0] (unit: 0.1mm)	1
LA-SPEED2	Use it to adjust the sub scanning magnification in feeder back stream reading mode for duplex simultaneous reading.(for fine adjustment of HSYNC length) adjustment range: -120 to 120 [temporary] (unit: 0.1%)	1

5.3.3 SORTER

5.3.3.1 SORTER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-31

COPIER > SORTER > ADJUST		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PNCH-HLE	Use it to adjust the length from the edge of paper to the punch hole. settings range: -4 to 2 (unit: mm)	1

5.4 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode)

5.4.1 COPIER

5.4.1.1 COPIER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<INSTALL>

T-5-32

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TONER-S	Use it to stir the toner inside the developing assembly at time of installation. Procedure 1. Select the item to highlight. 2. See that the message "Check the developer" is indicated. At this time, check to see that the developing assembly is correctly mounted. 3. Press the OK key to start the operation. The operation will automatically stop after a specific period of time. during operation, time remaining (sec): at the end, if successful, '0'; if error, '0xFFFF'.	1
CARD	Use it to set up the card reader. Procedure Enter the number of a specific card (0 to 2001), and press the OK key. (As many as 100 cards may be used, starting from the number you have entered.) At this time, initialization will take place for card control information (group ID and ID No.).	1
E-RDS	Use it to specify the use of E-RDS. 0: off (do not use; default) 1: use RDS (transmit all counter information)	1
RGW-PORT	Use it to set the Sales Company server port number used for embedded-RDS. settings range: 1 to 6535	1
COM-TEST	Use it to check the connection to the server used for E-RDS. Procedure 1) Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key. 2) See where a connection has been made. (The result will be indicated as 'OK' or 'NG'.) OK: connection possible; NG: connection not possible	1
COM-LOG	Use it to indicate the details of the result of the communication test executed for the server used for E-RDS. Procedure 1) Select the item to highlight, and press [show info]. log information particulars: year, date, time, error code, error detail (128 characters max.)	1
RGW-ADR	Use it to specify the URL of the server used for E-RDS. Procedure 1) Select the item to highlight, and press [show information]. 2) When the URL input screen appears, enter the appropriate URL and press the OK key. (default: https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agnetif010)	1
STRD-POS	Use it to adjust the face (CCD) read position for DADF stream reading mode. settings range: 1 to 200 [default: 100] (unit: 0.1 mm)	1
CNT-DATE	Setting of the start date to send counter information to the server. Set the start date to send counter information to the server by the third party advanced function for Embedded-RDS (eRDS). [Remarks] This mode is displayed only when the third party advanced function for eRDS is available. Setting range: YYYY: year, MM: month, HH: hour, MM: minute Factory setting value: 000000000000 (12 digits: YYYYMMDDHHMM)	1
CNT-INTV	Setting of the interval to send counter information to the server. Set the interval to send counter information to the server by the third party advanced function for Embedded-RDS (eRDS). [Remarks] This mode is displayed only when the third party advanced function for eRDS is available. Setting range: 1 to 168 (for a week) Factory setting value: 24	1

<CCD>

T-5-33

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD		
Sub-item	Description	Level
CCD-ADJ	Use it to execute CCD auto adjustment. Procedure 1) Place about 10 sheets of paper (the whitest of all papers used by the user, other than color print paper) on the platen glass. 2) Select <CCD-ADJ> to highlight, and press the OK key. 3) See that auto adjustment takes place (about 15 sec). During adjustment, <ACTIVE> will be indicated. 4) See that the scanning lamp goes on twice during adjustment. At the end, the screen will show <OK!>. 5) See that all items of service mode have been updated (COPIER>ADJUST>CCD). Record the new settings on the service label. If you have replaced the CCD unit, scanning lamp, inverter PCB, or platen board glass (standard white plate), be sure to execute this mode item.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DF-WLVL1/2	Use it to execute ADF white level adjustment (platen board scan/stream reading scan) Procedure 1) Place a sheet of paper (of the type most frequently used by the user) on the platen board glass, and execute the following: COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1. The white level for book mode is read (checking the degree of transmission of the glass for book mode). 2) Place a sheet of paper often used by the user in the DF, and execute the following: COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL2. The white level for DF mode (stream reading) is read (checking the degree of transmission of glass for stream reading; reading both sides of the chart). face: computes DFTAR-R/G/B back: computes DFTAR2-R/G/B Caution: Be sure to execute both of the foregoing 2 items at the same time.	1
LUT-ADJ	start-ups the reading sequence for CCD seam correction data (gray plate scanning) [not operating in this machine]	1
DF-LNR	Start of calculation of gain offset for front/back matching from DF composite chart reading data (No. 2 and No. 10) By executing this mode after setting the reading data of No. 2 and No. 10 of DF composite chart to perform matching of difference in front/back density to "ADJUST>CCD>DFCH_XX", linearity characteristics are calculated and a setting value is determined.	1
MTF-CLC	Calculate the MTF filter count which is actually set to ASIC based on the MTF value. Calculate the MTF filter count which is actually set to ASIC based on the MTF value specified for each CCD/CIS in COPIER>ADJUST>CCD>MTF-M1 to 3, MTF-S1.	1
LUT-ADJ2	start-ups the reading sequence for CCD seam correction data 2 (DS chart)	2

<LASER>

T-5-34

COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
POWER	Use it to turn on the laser for laser power adjustment. Procedure 1) Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key. 2) See that the laser goes on. 3) See that the laser goes off in about 30 sec. (To turn it off in the middle, press the Stop key.)	1

<DPC>

T-5-35

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DPC	Use it to force the execution of potential control. The machine is designed so that it will not perform potential control at power-on (recovery mode) if the temperature of the fixing assembly is 70 deg C or higher. If you have replaced the photosensitive drum or the laser unit, or if you have changed the drum potential setting, be sure to execute this mode item. Procedure 1) Select the item, and type in '1'; then, press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then on the main power switch. 3) See that the machine executes potential control and stops it automatically.	1
OFST	Use it to adjust the offset value of the potential sensor. This mode item is part of the series of procedures you have to perform when you have replaced the potential sensor unit. Be sure never to execute it on its own. Procedure 1) Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key. 2) See that the machine executes offset adjustment and stops it automatically.	1

<CST>

T-5-36

COPIER > FUNCTION > CST		
Sub-item	Description	Level
C3-STMTR C3-A4R C4-STMTR C4-A4R	Use it to register the paper width basic value of the cassette 3/4. STMTR width: 139.5 mm; A4R width: 210 mm To make fine adjustments after registering a value, use the following: ADJUST>CST-ADJ>C3-STMTR, C3-A4R, C4-STMTR, C4-A4R. Procedure 1) Put STMTR paper in the cassette, and adjust the slide guide plate to the width. 2) Select C3-STMTR (C4-STMTR) to highlight, and press the OK key so that the machine executes auto adjustment and register the value. 3) Likewise, repeat steps 1) and 2) to register the basic value for A4R.	1
MF-A4R MF-A6R MF-A4	Use it to register the paper width basic value for the manual feed tray. A4R width: 210 mm; A6R: 105 mm; A4 width: 297 mm To make fine adjustments after registering a basic value, use the following: COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A4R, MF-A6R, MF-A4. Procedure 1) Put A4R paper in the manual feed tray, and adjust the size guide to the width. 2) Select MF-A4R to highlight, and press the OK key so that the machine executes auto adjustment and register the value. 3) Likewise, repeat steps 1) and 2) for A6R and A4.	1

<CLEANING>

T-5-37

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING		
Sub-item	Description	Level
WIRE-CLN	Clean all charging wires 5 times (5 trips) all at the same time. Procedure 1) Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key. 2) See that the notation changes to 'ACTIVE', indicating that the charging wires are being cleaned. 3) See that the machine stops cleaning automatically. (To stop in the middle, press the OK key.)	1

<FIXING>

T-5-38

COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING		
Sub-item	Description	Level
NIP-CHK	Use it to generate printouts for automatic measurement of the fixing nip width. Procedure 1) Make about 20 A4 prints. 2) Put A4 plain or recycled paper in the manual feed tray. 3) Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key. 4) See that the paper is picked from the manual feed tray, held in the fixing nip area, and discharged in about 20 sec. 5) Check the nip width of the discharged paper: if b is from 4.5 to 6.5 mm, the nip may be considered normal. In the event of a fixing fault or wrinkling and if the difference between the front b and the rear c is appreciable, go to step 6) to make adjustments. 6) Tighten the screw found on the side with the narrower nip; then, loosen the other screw to the same degree (so that the nip width is identical between front and rear).	1

<PANEL>

T-5-39

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL		
Sub-item	Description	Level
LCD-CHK	Use it to check for missing dots in the LCD. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key to start. See that the front of the touch panel starts to go on in the following order: white, black, red, green, blue. 2) Press the Stop key to end the operation.	1
LED-CHK	Use it to check the activation of the LEDs on the control panel. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key to start. See that the LEDs go on in sequence. 2) Press [LED-off] to end the operation.	1
LED-OFF	Check the LEDs on the control panel. Procedure 1) Select the item to end the operation for LED-CHK.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL		
Sub-item	Description	Level
KEY-CHK	Use it to check the key inputs. Procedure 1) Select [KEY-CHK] so that the numbers and names of input keys appear. 2) Check a key to check. If normal, its corresponding character will appear on the touch panel. (See the table.) 3) Select [KEY-CHK] to end the ongoing check.	1
TOUCHCHK	Use it to adjust the coordinates of the analog touch panel. Procedure - Use it to match a specific point of the touch panel and its coordinates on the LCD. - If you have replaced the LCD assembly, be sure to execute this service mode item. 1) Select [TOUCH CHECK] to highlight, and press the OK key. 2) Press the 9 + symbols that appear on the touch panel to make adjustments.	1

Numbers and Names of Input Keys

T-5-40

Key	Indication on screen
0 to 9,#,*	0 to 9,#,*
Reset	RESET
Stop	STOP
User mode	USER
Start	START
Clear	CLEAR
ID	ID
Help	?
Counter Check	BILL

<PART-CHK>

T-5-41

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK		
Sub-item	Description	Level
CL	Use it to select a clutch whose operation you want to check. (range: 1 to 5) Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Using the keypad, type in the code of the clutch. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press [CL-on] to check the operation.	1
CL-ON	Use it to start a check on the clutch. Procedure 1) Select an item, and press the OK key so that the clutch will repeatedly go on and off as follows: for 0.5 sec, on -> for 10 sec, off -> for 0.5 sec, on -> for 10 sec, off -> for 0.5 sec, on -> off.	1
MTR	Use it to select the motor whose operation you want to check. (range: 1 to 30) Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key so that the motor will repeatedly go on and off as follows: for 0.5 sec, on -> for 10 sec, off -> for 0.5 sec, on -> for 10 sec, off -> for 0.5 sec, on -> off.	1
MTR-ON	Use it to start the operation of the motor. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key so that the motor will repeatedly go on and off as follows: - for 20 sec on -> off - the hopper stirring motor and horizontal registration motor: for 10 sec, on -> off - shift tray motor: stops at front/rear HP Be sure to remove the toner bottle before checking the operation of the bottle motor (MTR=22); otherwise, the toner is likely to spill out inside the machine.	1
SL	Use it to select the solenoid whose operation you want to check. (range: 1 to 11) Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Type in the code of the solenoid using the keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press [SL-on] to check the operation.	1
SL-ON	Use it to start the operation of the solenoid. 1) Select the item, and press the OK key so that the solenoid will repeatedly go on and off as follows: for 0.5 sec, on -> for 10 sec, off -> for 0.5 sec, on -> for 10 sec, off -> for 0.5 sec, on -> off.	1

T-5-42

- Clutch

Code	Name
1	manual feed d pickup clutch (CL3)
2	left deck pull-off clutch (CL4)
3	side deck pickup clutch (CL102)
4	developing clutch (CL1)
5	registration roller clutch (CL2)

T-5-43

- Motor

Code	Name
1	laser scanner motor (M22)
2	drum motor (M1)
3	main motor (M2)
4	fixing motor (M3)
5	right deck pickup motor (M11)
6	left deck pickup motor (M24)
7	cassette 3/4 pickup motor (M12)
8	vertical path duplexing feed motor (M25)
9	vertical path lower motor (M27)
10	vertical path upper motor (M26)
11	side deck main motor (M101)
12	reversal motor (M14)
13	duplexing feed right motor (M18)
14	delivery motor (M13)
15	pre-registration motor (M17)
16	duplexing feed left motor (M19)
17	primary charging wire cleaning motor (M6)
18	pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor (M7)
19	transfer/separation charging wire cleaning motor (M8)
20	hopper stirring motor (M9); CW rotation (feed/stirring)
21	hopper stirring motor (M9); CCW rotation (stirring)
22	bottle motor (M10) be sure to remove the toner bottle before starting a check.
23	duplexing horizontal registration motor (M16)
24	shutter motor (M15)
25	right deck lifter motor (M4)
26	left deck lifter motor (M5)
27	cassette 3 lifter motor (M20)
28	cassette 4 lifter motor (M21)
29	side deck lifter motor (M102)
30	shift tray motor (SM101)

T-5-44

- Solenoid

Code	Name
1	right deck pickup solenoid (SL6)
2	left deck pickup solenoid (SL7)
3	cassette 3 pickup solenoid (SL3)
4	cassette 4 pickup solenoid (SL4)
5	manual feed release solenoid (SL2)
6	deck pickup roller release solenoid (SL101)
7	delivery flapper solenoid (SL5)
8	reversing flapper solenoid (SL8)
9	fixing inlet guide drive solenoid (SL1); plunger returned
10	fixing inlet guide drive solenoid (SL1); plunger drawn
11	fixing web solenoid (SL9)

<CLEAR>

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR		
Sub-item	Description	Level
ERR	Use it to reset an error code. (codes: E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E005) Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then on the main power.	1
DC-CON	Use it to initialize the RAM on the DC controller PCB. The RAM will be initialized when the main power switch is turned off and then back on. Procedure 1) Print out the service mode particulars using the following: COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select the item, and press the OK key. 3) Turn off and then on the main power switch. 4) As necessary, enter the data you have printed using P-PRINT.	1
R-CON	Use it to initialize the RAM on the reader controller PCB. The settings will be initialized when you turn off and then on the main power switch. Procedure 1) Print out the service mode particulars using the following: COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select the item, and press the OK key. 3) Turn off and then back on the main power. 4) As necessary, enter the data you have printed using P-PRINT.	1
JAM-HIST	Use it to reset the jam history. The jam history will be reset when the OK key is pressed. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key.	1
ERR-HIST	Use it to reset the error code history. The error code will be reset when the OK key is pressed. 1) Select the item, and press the OK key.	1
PWD-CLR	Use it to reset the password of the system administrator. The password of 'system administrator' set in user mode is reset when the OK key is pressed. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key.	1
ADRS-BK	Clearing the address book. The address book is cleared when the main power switch is turned OFF and ON.	1
CNT-MCON	Use it to reset the service counter whose reading is kept by the main controller PCB. The counter reading is reset when the OK key is pressed. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key.	1
CNT-DCON	Use it to reset the service counter whose reading is kept by the DC controller PCB. The counter reading will be reset when the OK key is pressed. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key.	1
OPTION	Use it to reset the service mode setting OPTION to its default setting (as upon RAM initialization). The setting will be initialized when the OK key is pressed. The execution of this item will reset the data kept by the main controller, DC controller, and reader controller. Procedure 1) Print out the service mode particulars using the following: COPIER>FUTON>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select the item, and press the OK key.	1
MMI	Use it to reset the following settings of user mode: - backup user data for copier control panel (user settings) - common settings backup data (user settings) - various backup data except FAX data (sure settings) The settings will be initialized when the main power switch is turned off and then back on. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then back on the main power.	1
MN-CON	Use it reset the RAM on the main controller PCB. The RAM will be reset when the main power switch is turned off and then back on. Procedure 1) Print out the service mode particulars using the following: COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select the item, and press the OK key. 3) Turn off and then back on the main power. 4) As necessary, enter the data you have printed out using P-PRINT.	1
CARD	Use it to reset the data related to card ID (group). The card ID-related data will be reset when the main power switch is turned off and then back on. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then back on the main power.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR		
Sub-item	Description	Level
ALARM	Use it to reset the alarm log. The alarm log will be reset when the main power switch is turned off and the back on. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then back on the main power.	1
LANG-ERR	Clear the language-related error. Use this mode to recover from an error when a language-related error occurs after the language setting is changed from the default. (The setting is returned to the default value after recovery.)	1
DF-RCON	Initialize the backup data of DF-RCON board (EEPROM) Clear the EEPROM value used to maintain backup data installed in DF-RCON and initialize the data.	1
SND-STUP	Use it to reset the transmission read settings. The transmission read settings will be reset when the main power switch is turned off and then back on. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then back on the main power.	2
CA-KEY	Use it to reset the CA certificate and key. The CA certificate and the key will be reset when the main power switch is turned off and then back on. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn off and then back on the main power.	2
KEY-CLR	Clear the encryption key for the HDD encryption board. Clear the key to replace the encryption key in the HDD encryption board (security kit). Select KEY-CLR and press the OK key to clear the encryption key. When turning off/on the main power after performing this operation, the encryption board installation process operates, and a new encryption key is generated. Note) When this operation is performed, all the data in HDD become unavailable. Therefore, when turning off/on the main power after performing this operation, it is necessary to start from formatting of HDD.	2

<MISC-R>

T-5-46

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SCANLAMP	Use it to turn on the scanning lamp. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key so that the scanning lamp goes on and remains on for 3 sec.	1

<MISC-P>

T-5-47

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P		
Sub-item	Description	Level
P-PRINT	Use it to print out service mode settings. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to generate a printout.	1
USER-PRT	Use it to print out user mode settings. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to generate a printout.	1
PRE-EXP	Checking the pre-exposure lamp (LED). 1) Select the item to highlight. 2) Press the OK key to execute various operations for several seconds. The operation will stop automatically. (full activation) 3) Press the OK key to generate a printout. Reference If the photosensitive drum suffers a fault as the result of lamp activation, rotate the drum.	1
D-PRINT	Use it to print out service mode settings (DISPLAY). The settings under DISPLAY will be printed (not including P-PRINT, LBL-PRINT, HIST-PRINT and ALARM). Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to generate a printout.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P		
Sub-item	Description	Level
ENV-PRT	Use it to print out a log of changes in the machine inside temperature/humidity and in fixing temperature. The log will show changes in the machine inside temperature/humidity and in fixing temperature (center) collected from the monitor outputs of the non-contact thermistor and the environment sensor. 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to generate a printout.	1
KEY-HIST	Use it to print out the history of control panel key inputs. 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to generate a printout.	1
TRS-DATA	Transition of memory reception data. Transmit the memory reception data to the data BOX. Operation Method: 1) Select the item. 2) Press [OK] so that the data is transmitted.	1
LBL-PRNT	Print the service label. Print the description on the service label. Operation Method: 1) Set an A4/LTR in Cassette 1. 2) Select the item. 3) Press [OK] so that the label is printed. It will take about 15 sec to start printing.	1
HIST-PRT	Use it to print out the jam history and the error history. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to generate a printout.	2

<SENS-ADJ>

T-5-48

COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ		
Sub-item	Description	Level
STCK-LMT	Use it to adjust the position of the shift tray full sensor. If the tray is full, 'on' will be indicated; if empty, 'off' will be indicated.	2

<SYSTEM>

T-5-49

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DOWNLOAD	Use it to switch to download mode. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key to start download mode.	1
CHK-TYPE	Use it to select the appropriate partition number for execution of HD-CHECK or HD-CLEAR. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Select the number of the partition you want using the keypad. 0: entire HDD (*1, *2) 1: image storage area 2: general-purpose file (user settings data, log data, PDL spool data) storage area 3: PDL-related file storage area 4: firmware storage area (*1, *2) 5: MEAP area 6: address book area (*1) *1: cannot be initialized using HD-CLEAR. *2: can be initialized using the SST.	1
HD-CHECK	Use it to check and recover the partition you have selected using CHK-TYPE. procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) See the result. (1: OK; 2: NG (hardware); 3: NG (software) (recovery sector/substitute sector also indicated))	1
HD-CLEAR	Use it to initialize the partition you have selected using CHK-TYPE. Procedure 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DEBUG-1	Specify the type of logs to be saved and the timing to save them in HDD. Setting value: 0 to 3 (Default: 0) MEMO: -This mode is not used in regular service. (This mode is used to analyze causes of troubles.) -Follow an instruction of Quality Support Div. when using this mode. Setting range: 0: Save PLOG at the timing when Reboot/Exception is detected. 1: Save PLOG at the timing when Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected. 2: Save SUBLOG at the timing when Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected. 3: Save SUBLOG in overwriting mode at the timing when Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected. Factory setting value: 0	2
DEBUG-2	Print out logs saved in HDD. Print out PLOG data which is saved when "0" or "1" is specified for COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM>DEBUG-1. [Remarks] SUBLOG data saved when "2" or "3" is specified for COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM>DEBUG-1 is not printed out. Number of printouts: Approximately 20 printouts in A4 size	2

5.4.2 FEEDER

5.4.2.1 FEEDER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-50

COPIER > FEEDER > FUNCTION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SENS-INT	Use it to adjust the sensitivity of individual sensors of the ADF. Be sure to clean the sensor area before executing the item. Procedure 1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) See that the execution ends automatically.	1
MTR-CHK	Use it to check the ADF motor on its own. Procedure 1) Press MTR-CHK to highlight. 2) Type in the appropriate motor number using the keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press MTR-on to start the check. Motor Number 0: pickup motor 1: feed motor Adjustment range: 0 to 4	1
TRY-A4	Use it to execute automatic adjustment of paper width detection reference point 1 of the ADF original pickup tray. (A4)	1
TRY-A5R	Use it to execute automatic adjustment of paper width detection reference point 2 of the ADF original pickup tray. (A5R)	1
TRY-LTR	Use it to execute automatic adjustment of paper width detection reference point 1 of the ADF original pickup tray. (LTR)	1
TRY-LTRR	Use it to execute automatic adjustment of paper width detection reference point 2 of the ADF original pickup tray. (LTRR)	1
FEED-CHK	Use it to check paper movement in the ADF on its own. Procedure 1) Press FEED-CHK to highlight. 2) Type in the appropriate paper feed mode using the keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FEED-on to check the operation. Paper Feed Mode Number 0: simplex pickup delivery operation 1: duplex pickup delivery operation 2: simplex pickup delivery operation (w/ stamp) 3: duplex pickup delivery operation (w/ stamp)	1
CL-CHK	Use it to check the ADF clutch on its own. Procedure 1) Press CL-CHK to highlight. 2) Type in the appropriate clutch number. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press CL-on to check the operation. Clutch Number 0: pickup clutch	1

COPIER > FEEDER > FUNCTION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
CL-ON	Use it to start the operation of the clutch. Procedure 1) Press CL-on and then the OK key to start the operation of the clutch. 2) Press the OK key once again to stop the operation. (The operation will stop automatically in about 2 sec; however, the indication will not change to 'STOP' unless you press the OK key.)	1
FAN-CHK	Use it to check the ADF cooling fan on its own. Procedure 1) Press FAN-CHK to highlight. 2) Type in the fan number using the keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FAN -on to check the operation. Fan Number 0, 1: cooling fan Adjustment range: 0 to 2	1
FAN-ON	Use it to start fan operation. Procedure 1) Press FN-on and then the OK key to start the operation of the fan. 2) Press the OK key to stop the operation. (The fan will stop automatically in about 5 sec; however, the indication will not be 'STOP' unless the OK key is pressed.)	1
SL-CHK	Use it to check the ADF solenoid on its own. Procedure 1) Press SL-CHK to highlight. 2) Type in the solenoid number using the keypad. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press SL-on to check the operation. Solenoid Number 0: locking solenoid 1: stamp solenoid	1
SL-ON	Use it to start the operation of the solenoid. Procedure 1) Press SL to highlight and then the OK key to start the operation of the motor. 2) Press the OK key once again to stop the operation. (The operation will stop automatically in about 5 sec; however, the indication will not be 'STOP' unless the OK key is pressed once again.)	1
MTR-ON	Use it to start the operation of the motor. Procedure 1) Press MTR-on to highlight and then the OK key to start the operation of the motor. 2) Press the OK key once again to stop the operation. (The operation will stop automatically in about 5 sec; however, the indication will not be 'STOP' unless the OK key is pressed.)	1
ROLL-CLN	ADF Roller Cleaning Mode Execute the mode so that the motor will rotate the roller. Force lint-free paper moistened with alcohol against the roller to clean it. Procedure 1) Press ROLL-CLN to highlight. 2) While the roller is rotating, force lint-free paper moistened with alcohol against the roller to clean. 3) Select ROLL-CLN to highlight and press the OK key so that the roller will stop.	1
FEED-ON	Use it to check the movement of paper in the ADF on its own. Procedure 1) Press FEED-on and then the OK key so that paper movement will start according to the operation mode selected using FEED-CHK.	1

5.5 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode)

5.5.1 COPIER

5.5.1.1 COPIER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<BODY>

T-5-51

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PO-CNT	Use it to turn on and off the potential control mechanisms. setting: 0: off; 1: on (default)	1

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
MODEL-SZ	Use it to switchover the default magnification ratios and ADF original size detection. 0: AB (6R5E) 1: inch (5R4E) 2: A (3R3E) 3: AB/inch (6R5E)	1
FIX-TEMP	Use it to select down sequence mode. 0: normal 1: standard + 10 deg C (default) 2: standard - 5 deg C	1
FUZZY	Use it to turn on and off fuzzy control and to set the environment. 0: enable fuzzy control (default) 1: fix to low humidity environment mode (current level lower than standard) 2: fix to normal temperature/humidity mode 3: fix to high humidity mode (current level higher than standard)	1
CONFIG	Use it to select multiple firmware items stored on the hard disk and switchover country, language, machine type, and paper size configuration. Procedure XXYYZZ XX: country (JP); YY: language (ja); ZZ (00): machine type; AA (00): paper size configuration. The indications will be in keeping with the following: COPIER>DISPLAY>USER>LANGUAGE. (The notations in parentheses indicate defaults. The country and language notations are for indication only.) 1) Select <CONFIG>. 2) Select the appropriate item to highlight, and press the +/- key. 3) See that each press on the +/- key changes the selections in sequence. 4) When you have made all selections, press the OK key. 5) Turn off and then on the main power switch.	1
TR_SP_C1	Use it to change the transfer/separation output settings when the right deck is used as the source of paper by way of providing a remedial measure. Setting 0: normal (default); 1: separation fault; 2: double transfer; 3: transfer fault	1
TR_SP_C2	Use it to change the transfer/separation output setting when the left deck is used as the source of paper by way of providing a remedial measure. Settings 0: normal (default); 1: separation fault; 2: double transfer; 3: transfer fault	1
TR_SP_C3	Use it to change the transfer/separation output setting when the cassette 3 is used as the source of paper by way of providing a remedial measure. Settings 0: normal (default); 1: separation fault; 2: double transfer; 3: transfer fault	1
TR_SP_C4	Use it to change the transfer/separation output setting when the cassette 4 is used as the source of paper by way of providing a remedial measure. Settings 0: normal (default); 1: separation fault; 2: double transfer; 3: transfer fault	1
TR_SP_MF	Use it to change the transfer/separation output setting when the manual feed tray is used as the source of paper by way of providing a remedial measure. Settings 0: normal (default); 1: separation fault; 2: double transfer; 3: transfer fault	1
TR_SP_DK	Use it to change the transfer/separation output setting when the side paper deck is used as the source of paper by way of providing a remedial measure. Settings 0: normal (default); 1: separation fault; 2: double transfer; 3: transfer fault	1
W/SCNR	Use it to indicate the presence/absence of a reader unit. 0: reader unit absent (printer model) 1: reader unit present (default) When the presence of a reader unit is detected, the machine will automatically set it to '1'.	1
DFDST-L1	Use it to adjust the dust detection level for the ADF (sheet-to-sheet correction). A higher setting will cause the machine to be more sensitive to finer particles of dust. setting: 0 to 225 (Setting the item to '0' will disable the dust detection mechanism.)	1

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DFDST-L2	Use it to adjust the dust detection level for the ADF (post-job detection). A higher setting will cause the machine to detect finer particles of dust. setting: 0 to 255 (Setting the item to '0' will disable the dust detection mechanism.)	1
ENVP-INT	Use it to set the interval at which a log is collected for the machine inside temperature/humidity and fixing temperature. COPIER>FUNCTION>MIS-P>ENV-PRT and COPIER>DISPLAY>ENVRNT setting 0 to 480 (default: 60; in min)	1
BASE-SW	Use it to switch from MEAP-full model to base model. setting 0: off (base model) 1: on (full model)	1
SC-L-CNT	Use it to change the threshold level of the paper size (large/small) for the scan counter. setting 0: count B4 as small size (default) 1: count B4 as large size	1
DHON-TM	Use it to set the timing at which drum heater goes on in sleep mode (with reference to clock time). setting: 0 to 24 (default: 0; in hr)	1
DHON-IVL	Use it to set the timing at which the drum heater goes on in sleep mode (with reference to time after a shift to sleep mode). setting: 0, 15 to 1440 (default: 0; in min)	1
DHOF-TM	Use it to set the timing at which the drum heater goes off in sleep mode (with reference to clock time). setting: 0 to 24 (default: 01; in hr)	1
DHOF-IVL	Use it to set the timing at which the drum heater goes off in sleep mode (with reference to time after a shift to sleep mode). setting: 0, 15 to 1440 (default: 0; in min)	1
CBLTINVL	Use it to change the number of times the fixing web solenoid goes on. Make use of it when image faults occur as the result of soiling on the pressure roller. Setting 0: normal (default) 1: twice normal	1
CCD-LUT	Usage setting for the CCD gain correction data Use this item to correct the image deterioration (difference in density at center seam of image) due to aging. Set enabling/disabling data usage corrected with one of the followings: COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > LUT-ADJ, or LUT-ADJ2. Setting value: 0: not use [default] 1: use (LUT-ADJ correction data) [not available with this machine] 2: use (LUT-ADJ2 correction data)	1
ABC-MODE	Switching the background processing of document (switching digital ABC setting) Setting value: -1: not switch the background density (setting for photo document and document with complex modeling) 0: default 1 to 3: bigger the value is set, lighter the background density is.	1

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SJOB-CL	<p>Set whether or not to permit cancellation of the scanning job when a user performs logout. Cancel the operating scanning job when a user performs logout.</p> <p>[Remarks]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Scanning job" means a job for which scanning operation is completed, and the operation cannot be canceled when the scanning operation is being executed. - Cancellation performed by this mode is saved in the log in the same manner as cancellation performed by a user. <p>Setting range: 0: Cancellation prohibited 1: Cancellation permitted Factory setting value: 0</p>	1
IFX-CHIG	<p>Set the number of characters to ignore the email message received by IFAX. When the number of characters in the email message received by IFAX is less than the specified number of characters, the message is ignored and is not printed or transferred. When a number other than "0" is specified for the number of characters and the email message disappeared, and also when no TIFF file exists, a blank page with header and footer is printed and transferred. * A kanji character is recognized as a two-byte character. A control code such as CR is also included in the number of characters.</p> <p>Setting range: 0 to 999 (Unit: number of characters) 0: Do not ignore the email message. Factory setting value: 0</p>	1
BOX-BKUP	For restore control of the BOX backup function.	1
SCANTYPE	<p>Switch the type of reader. This is a service mode used to change the default reader to the optional reader. Use this mode to change the CIS reader to CCD reader.</p> <p>Setting range: 0: default reader 1: Optional reader Factory setting value: 0</p>	1
GR-ADJ-L	<p>Specify the gain setting level for linearity of Red color on the backside. Specify the gain setting level to adjust linearity of the image on the backside against the image on the front side.</p>	1
RAG-CONT	<p>Set the level of fixing smear control mode.</p> <p>0: No smear 1: Small level of smear 2: Middle level of smear 3: Large level of smear</p>	1
OR-ADJ-L	<p>Specify the offset setting level for linearity of Red color on the backside. Specify the offset setting level to adjust linearity of the image on the backside against the image on the front side. Setting value: -5 to 5 (default: 0)</p>	1
ABC-MD2	<p>Adjust the level of base density correction level for reading the backside. Setting value: -1 to 3 (default: 0)</p>	1
MXSPDSEL	<p>To set the skew correction (the idle rotation setting) for different paper width mixed in the original tray. When the skew movement found, perform the idle rotation (additional 2 rotations) in the DF path to increase the paper loop counts of the registration roller; this will correct the skew movement.</p> <p>Setting: 0: w/ idle rotation [default] 1: w/o idle rotation</p>	1
PO-CNTMD	<p>Use it to select the number of times the potential control mechanism goes on.</p> <p>0: once at power-on 1: once at power-on and, in addition, 10 and 60 min thereafter (simplified potential control mode) 2: once at power-on and, in addition, 10 and 60 min thereafter (normal potential control mode; default)</p>	2
W-CLN-P	<p>Use it to set the interval at which the primary charging wire is automatically cleaned. setting: every 100 to 2000 (sheets; default at 2000)</p>	2
IDL-MODE	<p>Use it to select idle rotation mode for the developing assembly.</p> <p>0: fix to low humidity mode (off) 1: environment control (default) 2: fix to normal temperature/humidity mode (idle rotation for 120 sec) 3: fix to high humidity mode (idle rotation for 300 sec) 4: power save mode</p>	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
FSPD-S1	Use it to select fixing enhancement mode. 0: normal (default) 1: fixing enhancement mode 2: not used	2
TSPLY-SW	Use it to switch over toner supply sequence. 0: environment control (default) 1: fix to low humidity mode (on for 1.4 sec, off for 1 sec) 2: fix to normal temperature/humidity mode (on for 1.5 sec, off for 1 sec) 3: fix to high humidity mode (on for 3 sec, off for 2 sec)	2
SCANSLCT	Use it to enable/disable the function used to compute the scan area from the selected paper size. setting 0: off (determine scan area by original detection) 1: on (determine scan area by paper size)	2
OHP-TEMP	Use it to switch over control temperature for transparency mode. setting 0: normal (default); 1: -5 deg C; 2: -10 deg C; 3: -15 deg C; 4: -20 deg C	2
SENS-CNF	Use it to set the arrangement of original sensors. setting 0: AB (default) 1: inch	2
RAW-DATA	Use it to specify how received data should be printed. If a received image has a fault, use this mode to find out if the fault is in the data or in image processing. setting 0: normal operation (default) 1: print as is	2
SHARP	Use it to change the level of sharpness (median value). setting: 1 to 5	2
LAPC-SW	Use it to switch over laser APC correction. 0: execute initial rotation APC if left alone for 10 min 1: execute initial rotation APC if left alone for 60 min (default) 2: execute initial rotation if left alone for 120 min 3: disable initial rotation APC only 4: disable	2
FDW-DLV	Use it to select face-up delivery or face-down delivery when the count is set to multiple. setting 0: normal (for a single original, face-up for all; default) 1: for a single original, face-up delivery if the count is set to '1'; otherwise, face-down	2
COTDPC-D	This item is for use at the factory. setting: 0 to 3 (default: 0)	2
EVL-VDT	Use it to switch over drum target potential to suit the environment of the site. setting: 0 to 6 (default: 1)	2
RMT-LANG	Use it to change the language for the remote UI to be used through the Web browser. Select the particular language using the + and - keys.	2
HI-HUME	Use it to change the developing bias frequency. If a separation fault occurs in a high humidity environment, set it to '1'. setting 0: 2700 Hz (default); 1: 200 Hz	2
IFAX-LIM	Use it to limit the number of output lines if an excess volume of data is received through i-fax. setting: 0 to 999 (default: 500) 0: no limit	2
DF-BLINE	Use it execute a remedial measure in response to black lines caused by dust on the platen roller when the ADF is use (stream reading mode). setting 0: disable (default) 1: enable	2
DRM-H-SW	Use it to enable/disable the nighttime drum heater. 0: enable drum heater 1: turn on/off drum heater in keeping with environment (default) 2: disable drum heater	2
SMTPTXPN	Use it to change the SMTP transmission port number. setting: 0 to 65535	2
SMTPRXPN	Use it to change the SMTP reception port number. setting: 0 to 65535	2
POP3PN	Use it to change the POP reception port number. setting: 0 to 65535	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
RUI-DSP	Use it to enable/disable a remote IU function (designed for the Disabilities Act). setting 0: do not show Copier screen on remote UI (default) 1: show Copier screen	2
ORG-LGL	Use it to set a special paper size that the ADF cannot recognize (applicable to LGL communicated by the ADF). setting 0: LGL (default) 1: FOOLSCAP 2: A-FOOLSCAP 3: FOLIO 4: G-LEGAL 5: OFFICIO 6: E-OFFICIO 7: A-OFFICIO 8: B-OFFICIO 9: A-LEGAL 10: M-OFFICIO	2
ORG-LTR	Use it to set a special paper size that the ADF cannot recognize (applicable to LTR communicated by the ADF). setting 0: LTR (default) 1: G-LTR 2: A-LTR 3: EXECUTIVE	2
ORG-LTRR	Use it to set a special paper size that the ADF cannot recognize (applicable to LTR-R communicated by the ADF). setting 0: LTR-R (default) 1: G-LTR-R 2: A-LTR-R 3: EXECUTIVE-R	2
ORG-B5	Select a special paper size that the ADF cannot recognize (applicable to B5 communicated by the ADF). setting 0: B5 (default) 1: K-LEGAL	2
UI-BOX	Use it to enable/disable the display of the box screen on the control panel. setting 0: do not display 1: display (default) 2: do not display (however, permit storage of PDF job in box)	2
UI-SEND	Use it to enable/disable display of the transmission screen on the control panel. setting 0: do not display 1: display (default)	2
UI-FAX	Use it to enable/disable display of the fax screen on the control panel. setting 0: do not display 1: display (default)	2
NW-SPEED	Use it to select the appropriate data transmission speed when a connection is made to a service network. setting 0: auto (default) 1: 100Base-Tx 2: 10Base-T	2
STS-PORT	Use it to enable/disable the port for TOT synchronous command communications. setting 0: disable (off; default) 1: enable (on)	2
CMD-PORT	Use it to enable/disable the port for TOT asynchronous status communications. Use it to enable/disable the port for asynchronous status communications when FTUIF-over-TCP/IP is in use. setting 0: disable (off; default) 1: enable (on)	2
MODELSZ2	Use it to enable/disable platen board original size detection (for global support; AB/inch mix). setting 0: disable global detection (default) 1: enable global detection	2
SZDT-SW	Use it to enable/disable switchover of CCD size detection and photo size detection for platen board original size detection. setting 0: disable photo size detection 1: enable photo size detection	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
NS-CMD5	Use it to limit the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication for SMTP authentication. setting 0: as determined by SMTP server (default) 1: do not use	2
NS-GSAPI	Use it to limit the use of GSSAPI authentication for restrictive SMTP authentication as part of GSSAPI authentication of SMTP authentication. setting 0: as determined by SMTP server (default) 1: do not use	2
NS-NTLM	Use it to limit the use of NTLM authentication for SMTP authentication. setting 0: as determined by SMTP server (default) 1: do not use	2
NS-PLNWS	Use it to limit the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication, which is plain-text authentication of SMTP authentication (however, only where PLAIN, LOGIN authentication restrictive communication packets are encrypted). setting 0: as determined by SMTP server (default) 1: do not use	2
NS-PLN	Use it to limit the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication, which is plain-text authentication of SMTP authentication (however, only where PLAIN, LOGIN authentication restrictive communication packets are not encrypted). setting 0: as determined by SMTP server (default) 1: do not use	2
NS-LGN	Use it to limit the use of LOGIN authentication for restrictive SMTP authentication of LOGIN authentication. setting 0: as determined by SMTP server (default) 1: do not use	2
MEAP-PN	Use it to change the HTTP port number of a MEAP application. setting: 0 to 65535 (default: 8000)	2
SVMD-ENT	Use it to see how to start service mode: setting 0: User Mode key -> 2 and 8 keys at the same time -> User Mode key (default) 1: User Mode key -> 4 and 9 keys at the same time -> User Mode key	2
SSH-SW	Use it to enable/disable the SSH server function. Setting 0: off (default) 1: on	2
RMT-LGIN	Use it to turning the SSH server function ON or OFF. Setting 0: off (default) 1: on	2
RE-PKEY	Use it to enable/disable regeneration of the SSH server key. setting 0: off (default) 1: on	2
U-NAME	Use it to set user names permitting connection to the SSH server. setting 8 characters max. (alphanumeric)	2
U-PASWD	Use it to set user passwords permitting connection to the SSH server. setting 8 characters max. (alphanumeric)	2
DA-PORT	Use it to enable/disable the port for TOT asynchronous status communication. setting 0: close (default) 1: open (w/ DA installed)	2
DA-CNCT	Use it to set the DA. setting 0: off (default) 1: on	2
CHNG-STS	Use it to set the TOT status connection port number. setting 1 to 65535 (default: 20010)	2
CHNG-CMD	Use it to set the TOT command connection port number. setting 1 to 65535 (default: 20000)	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
MEAP-DSP	Use it to enable/disable a shift from the MEAP to native screen. setting 0: off (shift to native seen; default) 1: on (do not shift to native screen)	2
ANIM-SW	Use it to enable/disable display of the Error/Jam screen with a MEAP application in operation. setting 0: off (display warning screen; default) 1: on (do not display warning screen)	2
MEAP-SSL	Use it to set the HTTPS port for MEAP. setting 0 to 65535 (default: 8443)	2
STNBY-TM	Use it to switch over the standby shift time. setting 0: normal (default) 1: increase standby shift time until possibility of image distortion is absent	2
KSIZE-SW	Use it to enable/disable support of K paper. setting 0: do not support K paper (default) 1: support K paper procedure 1) Set '0' in this service mode. 2) Set '0' for the following: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MODEL-SZ. 3) Perform the shut-down sequence, and turn off and then on the main power.	2
POST-DWN	A countermeasure mode to prevent smudges from appearing on the lead edge of an image (caused by pre-transfer upper guide) in the HH environment Decrease the post high pressure output value from 280uA to 70uA only in the HH environment, as an individual countermeasure, in order to prevent smudges from appearing on the lead edge of an image caused by the pre-transfer upper guide. 0: Normal (default) 1: Countermeasure mode (A post high pressure value is automatically changed when an HH environment is detected by the environment sensor.)	2
IMP-MISS	Set OFF/ON for detection of "unmatched" error in the number of printouts. Setting value: 0: OFF [default] 1: ON	2
UI-PRINT	Control the display of a print job screen on the control panel. Use this mode to set whether or not to display a print job screen on the control panel. This mode is available for a user who does not want to display a print job screen on the control panel. Setting range: 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen.[default]	2
WUEV-SW	Set whether or not to make a sleep notification. Set whether or not to make a sleep notification to the DS application on the network when the copying machine main unit switched its operation to or recovered from sleep operation. Setting range: 0, 1 (0: Make a sleep notification. 1: Do not make a sleep notification.) Factory setting value: 0	2
WUEV-INT	Set the interval for a sleep notification. Set the interval for a sleep notification when "0" is set to WUEV-SW. Setting range: 0 to 65535 (Unit: second) Factory setting value: 600	2
WUEV-POT	Set the port number for the destination of a sleep notification. Set the port number for the destination of a sleep notification when "0" is set to WUEV-SW. Setting range: 0 to 65535 Factory setting value: 11427	2
WUEV-RTR	Set the range of a sleep notification. Set the number of routers used to make a sleep notification when "0" is set to WUEV-SW. Setting range: 1 to 255 Factory setting value: 3	2
SJB-UNW	Switch the number of secure print jobs to be accumulated (scheduled number of jobs). Set "50" or "90" for the upper limit in the number of secure print jobs to be accumulated (scheduled number of jobs). Setting range: 0: 50 1: 90 Factory setting value: 0	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
UI-RSCAN	Control the display of a remote scanning screen on the control panel. Set whether or not to display a remote scanning screen on the control panel. This mode is available for a user who does not want to display the screen on the control panel. Setting range: 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Factory setting value: 1	2
UI-EPRNT	Control the display of an extended printing screen (EFI printing screen) on the control panel. Set whether or not to display an extended printing screen (EFI printing screen) on the control panel. This mode is available for a user who does not want to display the screen on the control panel. [Additional Information] In this screen, the conventional UI-EXT was divided into UI-RSCAN and UI-EPRNT so that each control can be performed separately. Setting range: 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Factory setting value: 1	2
UI-WEB	Control the display of a Web browser screen on the control panel. Set whether or not to display a Web browser screen on the control panel. This mode is available for a user who does not want to display the screen on the control panel. Setting range: 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Factory setting value: 1	2
WEBV-SW	Set whether or not to use the WEBDAV function. When 1 (ON) is set to this mode, the WEBDAV function is unavailable. (WEBDAV related information disappears from the following items. - User mode -> Setting of destination list specifications -> Registration of destinations -> File -> "WEBDAV" in the protocol - User mode -> "Use the chunk split transmission for WEBDAV transmission" in the setting of specifications for transmission [Reference] The WEBDAV function is installed in the main unit as standards, but there are cases when this function is not used in order to reduce the memory usage. Setting range: 0: Use the WEBDAV function. 1: Do not use the WEBDAV function. Factory setting value: 0	2
CARD-RNG	Set the number of available cards. Set the number of available cards used for card reader. Setting range: 1 to 1000 Factory setting value: 1000	2
WUEN-LIV	Set the activation period after a sleep notification is made from the network. Set the period until when the copying machine main unit is placed in the sleep mode next time after activated in the sleep mode from the network without jobs entered. Setting range: 10 to 600 (Unit: second) Factory setting value: 15	2
MAILYEAR	Enter the year/month/date in the subject and file name of an email. (Specifications for Santander Bank in Mexico) Automatically add the year/month/date, time, and allocation number at the end of characters specified for the subject and file name of an email. Setting range: 0: Do not add the year/month/date. 1: Add the year/month/date.	2
SEND-AUT	Switch the setting of user authentication to use SEND function. When setting the switch of this mode to ON (1), a guest button is displayed in the login screen for MEAP, with which user authentication for SEND function is executed. (Only authentication for SEND function can be executed.) If you do not want to use SEND function, press this button so that you can perform login without using an ID and password. [Remarks] When you perform login using the guest button, the setting in this mode does not function. Setting range: 0 (Do not display the guest button.) / 1 (Display the guest button.) Factory setting value: 0	2
DHCP-12	Set whether or not to validate the DHCP-Option 12 request. When the DHCP-12 switch is set to ON, an inquiry about a host name (Option 12) is made by using the DHCP-Option 55. *DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) Setting range: 0: OFF, 1: ON Factory setting value: 1	2
DHCP-81	Set whether or not to validate the DHCP-Option 81 request. When the DHCP-81 switch is set to ON and the dynamic DNS setting is set to ON in the user mode, dynamic change of an IP address by DHCP Option 81 is validated. Setting range: 0: OFF, 1: ON Factory setting value: 1	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Sub-item	Description	Level
USB-RCNT	Set whether or not to perform automatic connection when disconnecting the USB device. (USB RECONNECT) Setting range: 0: Do not perform automatic connection. 1: Perform automatic connection. Factory setting value: 0	2
UI-COPY	Make a setting to switch the display in the copy screen in the control panel. This mode is available for a user who does not want to display a print job screen on the control panel. Setting range: 0: Hide the copy screen. 1: Do not hide the copy screen.[default]	2
PP-LWRT	Not used	2

<USER>

T-5-52

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
COPY-LIM	Use it to put an upper limit to the number of copies. setting: 1 to 9999 (default: 9999)	1
SLEEP	Use it to enable/disable the sleep function. setting 0: off 1: on (default)	1
WEB-DISP	Use it to enable/disable the fixing web length warning message. setting 0: off (do not display) 1: on (display; default) If set to '0', the message will only be on the service mode screen.	1
W-TONER	Use it to enable/disable the collecting toner case full message. setting 0: off (do not display) 1: on (display; default) If set to '0', the message will be only on the service mode screen.	1
COUNTER1	Use it to set soft counter 1 of the user mode screen. 101: total 1 (fixed)	1
COUNTER2	Use it to set soft counter 2 of the user mode screen. setting: 0 to 999	1
COUNTER3	Use it to set soft counter 3 of the user mode screen. setting: 0 to 999	1
COUNTER4	Use it to set soft counter 4 of the user mode screen. setting: 0 to 999	1
COUNTER5	Use it to set soft counter 5 of the user mode screen. setting: 0 to 999	1
COUNTER6	Use it to set soft counter 6 of the user mode screen. setting: 0 to 999	1
CONTROL	Not used	1
B4-L-CNT	Use it to specify where B4 should be counted as large or small size for soft counters 1 thorough 6. 0: count as small size (default) 1: count as large size	1
COPY-JOB	Use it to enable/disable copy job reservation with a card reader/coin vendor in use. setting 0: enable copy job reservation (default) 1: disable copy job reservation	1
PR-PSESW	Use it to enable/disable the print pause function switch. setting 0: disable print pause function (default) 1: enable print pause function (display print output stop/resume button on user screen)	1
IDPRN-SW	Use it to switch over count increment jobs for the group control counter. 0: for PRINT, increment the following: box print, report print, SEND local print, PDL print (default) 1: for PRINT, increment the following: report print, SEND local print, PDL print	1
CNT-SW	Use it to switch over display of charge counter default items. setting 0: default total 1 (101; default) 1: default total 2 (102), copy total 2 (202), total A total 2 (127) 2: default total 1 (101), total small (104), total large (103), scan total 1 (501)	1

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TAB-ACC	Use it to enable/disable automatic switchover of cassettes for tab (index) paper. setting 0: do not change over between tab sheets (default) 1: change over between tab sheets	1
REMPNL	Use it to enable/disable the remote panel function. 0: off (default) 1: on	1
BCNT-AST	Use it to switch over job types for the count of the box prints with ASSIST in use. setting 0: count as PDL job (default) 1: count as copy job	1
DOC-REM	Use it to enable/disable the Remove Original message. setting 0: do not indicate (default) 1: indicate	1
FROM-OF	Set whether or not to delete a "from" address for email transmission. Setting value: 0: Do not delete a "from" address. (default) 1: Delete a "from" address.	1
FILE-OF	Set whether or not to prohibit email transmission to the file address. Prohibit transmission to the file address by prohibiting input of the file address from the address book. Setting value: 0: Do not prohibit transmission. (default) 1: Prohibit transmission. If a file address has been already registered, the address can be used even after this mode is set to "1". Therefore, delete the address manually.	1
MAIL-OF	Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to the email address. Prohibit transmission to the email address by prohibiting input of the email address from the address book. Setting value: 0: Do not prohibit transmission. (default) 1: Prohibit transmission. If an email address has been already registered, the address can be used even after this mode is set to "1". Therefore, delete the address manually.	1
IFAX-OF	Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to the IFAX address. Prohibit transmission to the IFAX address by prohibiting input of the IFAX address from the address book. Setting value: 0: Do not prohibit transmission. (default) 1: Prohibit transmission. If an IFAX address has been already registered, the address can be used even after this mode is set to "1". Therefore, delete the address manually.	1
LDAP-DEF	Switch the default value of the LDAP server search condition. Change the default condition for the attribute specified to search detailed information of the LDAP server. Setting value: 0: "Name" (default) 1: "Email" 2: "FAX" 3: "Organization" 4: "Organization unit" 5: User setting 1 6: User setting 2	1
HDCR-DSW	Set whether or not to display the menu of "ON/OFF of complete HDD deletion" in the user mode. User mode > System administration settings > Complete HDD deletion Setting value: 0: Do not display the menu. 1: Display the menu. Factory setting value: 0	1
SIZE-DET	Use it to enable/disable original size detection. 0: disable original size detection 1: enable original size detection	2
DATE-DSP	Use it to switch over data indication format: setting. 0: 'YY MM/DD 1: DD/MM 'YY 2: MM/DD/YY	2
MB-CCV	Use it to limit the users of the control cards for mail boxes. setting 0: do not limit (default) 1: limit	2

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TRY-STP	Use it to switch over operation when the finisher tray becomes full. setting 0: normal (suspend operation when finisher tray becomes full; default) 1: suspend in relation to height detection 2: do not suspend	2
MF-LG-ST	Use it to set the Extra Length key. setting 0: normal (default) 1: indicate Extra Length key on supported mode screens	2
CNT-DISP	Use it to enable/disable indication of a serial number in response to a press on the Counter Check key. setting 0: display serial number (default) 1: do not display serial number	2
PH-D-SEL	Select the number of lines for printing in photo mode. 0: 141 lines (default) 1: 134 lines	2
OP-SZ-DT	Use it to enable/disable original size detection for book mode. setting 0: off (require input of size on control panel; default) 1: on (use auto original size detection)	2
NW-SCAN	Use it to permit/not permit the network scan function. setting 0: do to permit network scan function (default) 1: permit network scan function Caution: For the Japanese model, the value cannot be changed. For a non-Japanese model, PSPCL is fixed to '1'; the value may be changed on other models.	2
HDCR-DSP	Use it to set how HDD full deletion mode may operate. 1: using 0s, delete once (default) 2: using random data, delete once 3: using random data, delete 3 times	2
JOB-INV	Use it to set the interval of jobs for an interrupt. setting 0: standard (at time of interrupt copy, continuously output next jobs; default) 1: output next job only after delivering last sheet of interrupt copy 2: output next job only after delivering last sheet of all jobs	2
PCL-COPY	Use it to set PCL command COPIES Meru/Pintubo/Hood compatibility. 0: use page-based control according to COPIES command value specified for each page (default) 1: Meru/Pinatubo/Hood compatibility mode 2 to 6535: reserved	2
PRJOB-CP	Use it to set the CCV count pulse generation for reception and report output. setting 0: do not generate count pulse (default) 1: generate count pulse	2
DPT-ID-7	Use it to select the 7-character input method for group ID registration and authentication. setting 0: normal (default) 1: use 7-character input	2
RUI-RJT	Use it to enable/disable connection of the HTTP port at 3 failed attempts at authentication by the RUI. setting 0: make invalid (default) 1: keep valid	2
CTM-S06	Use it to specify whether a password should be removed from the export file (file transmission address). setting 0: do not remove password from export file (default) 1: remove password from export file	2
FREG-SW	Use it to enable/disable display of the free area of the MEAP counter (SEND). setting 0: do not display (default) 1: display	2
IFAX-SZL	Use it to limit transmission size for i-fax transmission. setting 0: keep transmission size limit valid (using server/not using server) 1: keep transmission size limit invalid (only when not using server; default)	2
IFAX-PGD	Use it to enable/disable page-based division transmission (only when the transmission data size upper limit is exceeded). setting 0: do not permit page-based division transmission in i-fax simple mode (default) 1: enable page-based division transmission in i-fax simple mode	2

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
MEAPSAFE	Use it to enable/disable switchover to safe mode for MEAP. 0: off (default) 1: on (safe mode)	2
AFN-PSWD	Use it to limit access to user mode. setting 0: off (shift to user mode screen without prompting for password; default) 1: on (shift to user mode after password match)	2
PTJAM-RC	Use it to enable/disable PDL jam recovery. setting 0: off (disable recovery) 1: on (enable recovery; default)	2
SLP-SLCT	Use it enable/disable use of an existing network-based application. setting 0: do not use (default) 1: use When set to '1', no shift takes place to sleep mode 3.	2
PS-MODE	Use it to set PS compatibility mode. setting 0: not compatible (default) 1: offer PS type 3 halftone command compatibility (dither reverse) 2: compatible with priority on resolution 3: reserved 4: compatible for EFI landscape/portrait mix 5 to 65535: reserved	2
CNCT-RLZ	Use it to enable/disable the use of the connection serialization function. setting 0: off (disable connection serialization function; default) 1: on (enable connection serialization function)	2
INS-C/S	Expand the inserter function. (Only for a finisher inserter) Setting value: 0: Front cover only (default) 1: Multiple inserters of "front cover + inserted cover" MEMO: - This mode is only available for a finisher inserter. (A perfect binder inserter always supports multiple inserters of "front cover + inserted cover".) - This setting is validated for both copying and printing operation.	2
PDL-NCSW	Set the card management mode for print jobs. Control PDL print jobs using a New Card. - Conventional operation A PDL print job was received by the machine and printing was performed, regardless of whether or not a New Card was inserted. (Job entry was controlled by the driver on the host side.) - Operation after change When this mode is set to "0", the machine operates in the same manner as the conventional operation. When this mode is set to "1" and when a card is not inserted and the section ID does not match the card ID, printing is not performed. When this mode is set to "1" and when the card ID does not match the section ID of the job after a card is inserted, printing is performed. Setting range: 0: A PDL print job is received by the machine and printing is performed regardless of whether or not a New Card is inserted. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear] 1: When a card is not inserted and the section ID does not match the card ID, printing is not performed. Factory setting value: 0	2
DOM-ADD	Set whether or not to supplement the destination domain for email transmission. Perform transmission with an address in which the address entered for email transmission and the domain specified in the user mode (ex. @xxxx.co.jp) are combined. Setting value: 0: Do not supplement the domain. (default) 1: Supplement the domain. <To send email to "aaaa@xxxx.co.jp"> 1) Specify "xxxx.co.jp" for the domain in the user mode, and specify "1" for this mode. 2) If "aaaa" is entered for email transmission, the address is supplemented as "aaaa@xxx.co.jp".	2
CLR-TIM	Set the timing of complete deletion of processing data. Select the timing to execute complete deletion using the security kit. When complete deletion is executed, performance of job processing may decrease depending on the data. This occurs because processed page data is deleted during job processing and much load is applied to the processing to access the CPU or HDD. When this processing is performed after job processing is completed, job processing capability can be improved. Setting range: 0, 1 (0: Delete data during job processing. 1: Delete data after job processing is completed.) Factory setting value: 0	2

Soft Counter Specifications

100s: total

200s: copy (as needed, add 001 and up)

300s: print

400s: copy + print

500s: scan

600s: box print

700s: reception print

800s: report print

900s: transmission

<Guide to Symbols>

Yes: counter used in the machine.

large size: paper larger than B4.

small size: paper that is B4 or smaller.

numbers 1 and 2 under Description indicate the count for large size paper.

(The machine may be set so that it will count B4 and larger paper as a large size paper in service mode: COPIER>OPTION>USER>B4-L-CNT).

total A: total excluding local copy + remote copy.

total B: total excluding local copy + remote copy + box print.

copy: local copy + remote copy.

copy A: local copy + remote copy + box print.

print: PDL print + report print + box print.

print A: PDL print + report print.

scan: black-and-white scan + color scan

T-5-53

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
101	total 1	Yes
102	total 2	Yes
103	total (large)	Yes
104	total (small)	Yes
105	total (full color 1)	
106	total (full color 2)	
108	total (black-and-white 1)	Yes
109	total (black-and-white 2)	Yes
110	total (mono color; large)	
111	total (mono color; small)	
112	total (black-and-white; large)	Yes
113	total (black-and-white; small)	Yes
114	total 1 (duplex)	Yes
115	total 2 (duplex)	Yes
116	large (duplex)	Yes
117	small (duplex)	Yes
118	total (mono color 1)	
119	total (mono color 2)	
120	total (full color; large)	
121	total (full color; small)	
122	total (full color + mono color; large)	
123	total (full color + mono color; small)	
124	total (full color + mono color 2)	
125	total (full color + mono color 1)	
126	total A1	Yes
127	total A2	Yes
128	total A (large)	Yes
129	total A (small)	Yes
130	total A (full color 1)	
131	total A (full color 2)	
132	total A (black-and-white 1)	Yes
133	total A (black-and-white 2)	Yes
134	total A (mono color; large)	
135	total A (mono color; small)	
136	total A (black-and-white; large)	Yes
137	total A black-and-white; small)	Yes
138	total A1 (duplex)	
139	total A2 (duplex)	
140	large A (duplex)	
141	small A (duplex)	
142	total A (mono color 1)	
143	total A (mono color 2)	
144	total A (full color; large)	
145	total A (full color; small)	
146	total A (full color + mono color; large)	
147	total A (full color + mono color; small)	
148	total A (full color + mono color 2)	

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
149	total A (full color + mono color 1)	
150	total B1	Yes
151	total B2	Yes
152	total B (large)	Yes
153	total B (small)	Yes
154	total B (full color 1)	
155	total B (full color 2)	
156	total B (black-and-white 1)	Yes
157	total B (black-and-white 2)	Yes
158	total B (mono color; large)	
159	total B (mono color ; small)	
160	total B (black-and-white; large)	Yes
161	total B (black-and-white; small)	Yes
162	total B1 (duplex)	
163	total B2 (duplex)	
164	large B (duplex)	
165	small B (duplex)	
166	total B (mono color 1)	
167	total B (mono color 2)	
168	total B (full color; large)	
169	total B (full color; small)	
170	total B (full color + mono color; large)	
171	total B (full color + mono color; small)	
172	total B (full color + mono color 2)	
173	total B (full color + mono color 1)	
201	copy (total 1)	Yes
202	copy (total 2)	Yes
203	copy (large)	Yes
204	copy (small)	Yes
205	copy A (total 1)	Yes
206	copy A (total 2)	Yes
207	copy A (large)	Yes
208	copy A (small)	Yes
209	local copy (total 1)	Yes
210	local copy (total 2)	Yes
211	local copy (large)	Yes
212	local copy (small)	Yes
213	remote copy (total 1)	Yes
214	remote copy (total 2)	Yes
215	remote copy (large)	Yes
216	remote copy (small)	Yes
217	copy (full color 1)	
218	copy (full color 2)	
219	copy (mono color 1)	
220	copy (mono color 2)	
221	copy (black-and-white 1)	Yes
222	copy (black-and-white 2)	Yes
223	copy (full color; large)	
224	copy (full color; small)	
225	copy (mono color; large)	
226	copy (mono color; small)	
227	copy (black-and-white; large)	Yes
228	copy (black-and-white; small)	Yes
229	copy (full color + mono color; large)	
230	copy (full color + mono color; small)	
231	copy (full color + mono color/2)	
232	copy (full color + mono color/1)	
233	copy (full color; large; duplex)	
234	copy (full color; small; duplex)	
235	copy (mono color; large; duplex)	
236	copy (mono color; small; duplex)	
237	copy (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
238	copy (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
245	copy A (full color 1)	
246	copy A (full color 2)	

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
247	copy A (mono color 1)	
248	copy A (mono color 2)	
249	copy A (black-and-white 1)	Yes
250	copy A (black-and-white 2)	Yes
251	copy A (full color; large)	
252	copy A (full color; small)	
253	copy A (mono color; large)	
254	copy A (mono color; small)	
255	copy A (black-and-white; large)	Yes
256	copy A (black-and-white; small)	Yes
257	copy A (full color + mono color; large)	
258	copy A (full color + mono color; small)	
259	copy A (full color + mono color 2)	
260	copy A (full color + mono color 1)	
261	copy A (full color; large; duplex)	
262	copy A (full color; small; duplex)	
263	copy A (mono color; large; duplex)	
264	copy A (mono color; small; duplex)	
265	copy A (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
266	copy A (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
273	local copy (full color 1)	
274	local copy (full color 2)	
275	local copy (mono color 1)	
276	local copy (mono color 2)	
277	local copy (black-and-white 1)	Yes
278	local copy (black-and-white 2)	Yes
279	local copy (full color; large)	
280	local copy (full color; small)	
281	local copy (mono color; large)	
282	local copy (mono color; small)	
283	local copy (black-and-white; large)	Yes
284	local copy (black-and-white; small)	Yes
285	local copy (full color + mono color; large)	
286	local copy (full color + mono color; small)	
287	local copy (full color + mono color 2)	
288	local copy (full color + mono color 1)	
289	local copy (full color; large; duplex)	
290	local copy (full color; small; duplex)	
291	local copy (mono color; large; duplex)	
292	local copy (mono color; small; duplex)	
293	local copy (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
294	local copy (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
002	remote copy (full color 1)	
003	remote copy (full color 2)	
004	remote copy (mono color 1)	
005	remote copy (mono color 2)	
006	remote copy (black-and-white 1)	Yes
007	remote copy (black-and-white 2)	Yes
008	remote copy (full color; large)	
009	remote copy (full color; small)	
010	remote copy (mono color; large)	
011	remote copy (mono color; small)	
012	remote copy (black-and-white; large)	Yes
013	remote copy (black-and-white; small)	Yes
014	remote copy (full color + mono color; large)	
015	remote copy (full color + mono color; small)	
016	remote copy (full color + mono color 2)	
017	remote copy (full color + mono color 1)	
018	remote copy (full color; large; duplex)	
019	remote copy (full color; small; duplex)	
020	remote copy (mono color; large; duplex)	
021	remote copy (mono color; small; duplex)	
022	remote copy (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
023	remote copy (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
301	print (total 1)	Yes

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
302	print (total 2)	Yes
303	print (large)	Yes
304	print (small)	Yes
305	print A (total 1)	Yes
306	print A (total 2)	Yes
307	print A (large)	Yes
308	print A (small)	Yes
309	print (full color 1)	
310	print (full color 2)	
311	print (mono color 1)	
312	print (mono color 2)	
313	print (black-and-white 1)	Yes
314	print (black-and-white 2)	Yes
315	print (full color; large)	
316	print (full color; small)	
317	print (mono color; large)	
318	print (mono color; small)	
319	print (black-and-white; large)	Yes
320	print (black-and-white; small)	Yes
321	print (full color + mono color; large)	
322	print (full color + mono color; small)	
323	print (full color + mono color/2)	
324	print (full color + mono color/1)	
325	print (full color; large; duplex)	
326	print (full color; small; duplex)	
327	print (mono color; large; duplex)	
328	print (mono color; small; duplex)	
329	print (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
330	print (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
331	PDL print (total 1)	Yes
332	PDL print (total 2)	Yes
333	PDL print (large)	Yes
334	PDL print (small)	Yes
335	PDL print (full color 1)	
336	PDL print (full color 2)	
339	PDL print (black-and-white 1)	Yes
340	PDL print (black-and-white 2)	Yes
341	PDL print (full color; large)	
342	PDL print (full color; small)	
345	PDL print (black-and-white; large)	Yes
346	PDL print (black-and-white; small)	Yes
351	PDL print (full color; large; duplex)	
352	PDL print (full color; small; duplex)	
355	PDL print (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
356	PDL print (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
401	copy + print (full color; large)	
402	copy + print (full color; small)	
403	copy + print (black-and-white; large)	
404	copy + print (black-and-white; small)	
405	copy + print (black-and-white 2)	
406	copy + print (black-and-white 1)	
407	copy + print (full color + mono color; large)	
408	copy + print (full color + mono color; small)	
409	copy + print (full color + mono color/2)	
410	copy + print (full color + mono color/1)	
411	copy + print (large)	
412	copy + print (small)	
413	copy + print (2)	
414	copy + print (1)	
415	copy + print (mono color; large)	
416	copy + print (mono color; small)	
417	copy + print (full color; large; duplex)	
418	copy + print (full color; small; duplex)	
419	copy + print (mono color; large; duplex)	
420	copy + print (mono color; small; duplex)	

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
421	copy + print (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
422	copy + print (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
501	scan (total 1)	Yes
502	scan (total 2)	Yes
503	scan (large)	Yes
504	scan (small)	Yes
505	black-and-white scan (total 1)	Yes
506	black-and-white scan (total 1)	Yes
507	black-and-white scan (total 2)	Yes
508	black-and-white scan (large)	Yes
509	black-and-white scan (small)	
510	color scan (total 1)	
511	color scan (total 2)	
512	color scan (large)	
601	color scan (small)	Yes
602	box print (total 1)	Yes
603	box print (total 2)	Yes
604	box print (large)	Yes
605	box print (small)	
606	box print (full color 1)	
607	box print (full color 2)	
608	box print (mono color 1)	
609	box print (black-and-white 1)	Yes
610	box print (black-and-white 2)	Yes
611	box print (full color; large)	
612	box print (full color; small)	
613	box print (mono color; large)	
614	box print (mono color; small)	
615	box print (black-and-white; large)	Yes
616	box print (black-and-white; small)	Yes
617	box print (full color + mono color; large)	
618	box print (full color + mono color; small)	
619	box print (full color + mono color 2)	
620	box print (full color + mono color 1)	
621	box print (full color; large; duplex)	
622	box print (full color; small; duplex)	
623	box print (mono color; large; duplex)	
624	box print (mono color; small; duplex)	
625	box print (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
626	box print (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
701	reception print (total 1)	Yes
702	reception print (total 2)	Yes
703	reception print (large)	Yes
704	reception print (small)	Yes
705	reception print (full color 1)	
706	reception print (full color 2)	
707	reception print (grayscale 1)	
708	reception print (grayscale 2)	
709	reception print (black-and-white 1)	Yes
710	reception print (black-and-white 2)	Yes
711	reception print (full color; large)	
712	reception print (full color; small)	
713	reception print (grayscale; large)	
714	reception print (grayscale; small)	
715	reception print (black-and-white; large)	Yes
716	reception print (black-and-white; small)	Yes
717	reception print (full color + grayscale; large)	
718	reception print (full color + grayscale; small)	
719	reception print (full color + grayscale 2)	
720	reception print (full color + grayscale 1)	
721	reception print (full color; large; duplex)	
722	reception print (full color; small; duplex)	
723	reception print (grayscale; large; duplex)	
724	reception print (grayscale; small; duplex)	

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
725	reception print (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
726	reception print (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
801	report print (total 1)	Yes
802	report print (total 2)	Yes
803	report print (large)	Yes
804	report print (small)	Yes
805	report print (full color 1)	
806	report print (full color 2)	
807	report print (grayscale 1)	
808	report print (grayscale 2)	
809	report print (black-and-white 1)	Yes
810	report print (black-and-white 2)	Yes
811	report print (full color; large)	
812	report print (full color; small)	
813	report print (grayscale; large)	
814	report print (grayscale; small)	
815	report print (black-and-white; large)	Yes
816	report print (full color + grayscale; large)	Yes
817	report print (full color + grayscale; small)	
818	report print (full color + grayscale; small)	
819	report print (full color + grayscale 2)	
820	report print (full color; large; duplex)	
821	report print (full color; large; duplex)	
822	report print (full color; small; duplex)	
823	report print (grayscale; large; duplex)	
824	report print (grayscale; small; duplex)	
825	report print (black-and-white; large; duplex)	
826	report print (black-and-white; small; duplex)	
901	copy scan total 1 (color)	
902	copy scan total 1 (black-and-white)	
903	copy scan total 2 (color)	
904	copy scan total 2 (black-and-white)	
905	copy scan total 3 (color)	
906	copy scan total 3 (black-and-white)	
907	copy scan total 4 (color)	
908	copy scan total 4 (black-and-white)	
909	local copy scan (color)	
910	local copy scan (black-and-white)	
911	remote copy scan (color)	
912	remote copy scan (black-and-white)	
913	transmission scan total 1 (color)	
914	transmission scan total 1 (black-and-white)	
915	transmission scan total 2 (color)	
916	transmission scan total 2 (black-and-white)	Yes
917	transmission scan total 3 (color)	
918	transmission scan total 3 (black-and-white)	Yes
919	transmission scan total 4 (color)	
920	transmission scan total 4 (black-and-white)	
921	transmission scan total 5 (color)	
922	transmission scan total 5 (black-and-white)	Yes
929	transmissions scan total 6 (color)	
930	transmission scan total; 6 (black-and-white)	Yes
931	transmission scan total 7 (color)	
932	transmission scan total 7 (black-and-white)	
933	transmission scan total 8 (color)	
934	transmission scan total 8 (black-and-white)	
935	universal transmission scan total (color)	
936	universal transmission scan total (black-and-white)	
937	box scan (color)	
938	box scan (black-and-white)	
939	remote scan (color)	
940	remote scan (black-and-white)	Yes
941	transmission scan/fax (color)	

COPIER > COUNTER		
No.	Description	Level
942	transmission scan/fax (black-and-white)	
943	transmission scan/i-fax (color)	
944	transmission scan/i-fax (black-and-white)	
945	transmission scan/e-mail (color)	
946	transmission scan/e-mail (black-and-white)	
947	transmission scan/FTP (color)	
948	transmission scan/FTP (black-and-white)	
949	transmission scan/SMB (color)	
950	transmission scan/SMB (black-and-white)	
951	transmission scan/IPX (color)	
952	transmission scan/IPX (black-and-white)	
953	transmission scan/database (black-and-white)	
954	transmission scan/database (color)	
955	transmission scan/local print (color)	
956	transmission scan/local print (black-and-white)	
957	transmission scan/box (color)	
958	transmission scan/box (black-and-white)	

<CST>

T-5-54

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
Sub-item	Description	Level
P-SZ-C1	Use it to set the paper size (right deck). setting: 6: A4 (default); 15: B5; 18: LTR	1
P-SZ-C2	Use it to set the paper size (left deck). setting: 6: A4 (default); 15: B5; 18: LTR	1
U1-NAME to U4-NAME	Use it to enable/disable display of a paper name when a size from a specific paper size group (U1 to U4) is detected. setting 0: on the touch panel, indicate U1, U2, U3, U4 (default) 1: indicate paper name selected in service mode: CST-U1, U2, U3, U4	2
CST-U1/U2/U3/U4	Use it to select paper names used in paper size groups. By setting any of the following special paper sizes for U1, U2, U3, and U4, these paper sizes may be recognized as special size papers for the universal cassette in question. setting 24: Foolscap (CST-U2; default) 25: Australian Foolscap 26: Oficio 27: Ecuadorian Oficio 28: Bolivian Oficio 29: Argentine Letter (U4; default) 30: Argentine Letter-R 31: Government Letter (U1; default) 32: Government Letter (U1; default) 32: Government Letter-R 34: Government Legal (U3; default) 35: Folio 36: Argentine Oficio 37: Mexico Oficio 38: Executive	2

<ACC>

T-5-55

COPIER > OPTION > ACC		
Sub-item	Description	Level
COIN	Use it to set the coin vendor mechanism. setting 0: off 1: on	1
DK-P	Use it to set the size of paper used in the Side Paper Deck.(for the Side Paper Deck AD1) setting 0: A4 (default) 1: B5 2: LTR	1
CCV2CT	Use it to enable/disable large 2 count control. 0: off (disable 2-count control; default) 1: on (enable 2-count control; count pulse width/pulse width, 100 msec) 2: on (enable 2-count control; count pulse width/pulse width, 30 msec)	1
CCV-LSZ	Use it to set a threshold for small/large size identification used in large 2 count mode. setting: 0 to 458 (default: 364; in mm)	1

COPIER > OPTION > ACC		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PD-SIZE	Setting size of the Side Paper Deck AE1 (displayed only the Side Paper Deck AE1 is mounted) Normal size can be set with the user mode, and special size can be set with the service mode. Setting Range: 0 to 37 [default: 0] The value 0 or 22 to 37 can be set with the service mode. If the setting value is 0 to 21, the value 1 to 21 can be input with the user mode.	1
CC-SPSW	Use it to set control card I/F support. 0: do not support (default) 1: support	2

<INT-FACE>

T-5-56

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE		
Sub-item	Description	Level
IMG-CONT	Use it to set the connection of the EFI controller. setting 0: no controller 1: EFI model (PINATUBO, Mt. Hood) 2: T/R, AHT model 3: EFI external controller present (Yukon/Pinatubo V2.0) 4: EFI external controller present (Meru V3.1)	1
AP-OPT	Use it to permit/not permit printing from application PrintMe built into the PS print server unit. setting 0: permit printing using unspecific ID (default) 1: permit printing using specific account 2: reject printing	2
AP-ACCNT	Use it to set (CPCA) group ID for printing (job) from application PrintMe built into the PS print server unit. setting 0 to 9999999 (default: 0)	2
AP-CODE	Use it to set the (CPCA) path for printing (job) from application PrintMe built into the PS print server unit. setting 0 to 99999999 (default: 0)	2

<TEMPO>

T-5-57

COPIER > OPTION > TEMPO		
Sub-item	Description	Level
F-POT-SW	Use it to enable/disable settings in the event of a transfer fault caused by a fault in the potential sensor. - Use it as a tentative remedy until the potential sensor is replaced. setting 0: off (default); 1: on	2
F-POT-D	Use it to make settings in relation to transfer faults caused by a fault in the potential sensor. - The setting will be valid only when F-POT-SW is set to '1'. - The degree of separation current may be 0>1>2. setting 0: if user tends to use originals with low image ratio (text original) 1: if user tends to use originals with high image ratio (photo original) 2: do not use normally; however, use if double transfer occurs (dropout at about 50 mm of leading edge)	2
F-HUM-SW	Use it to enable/disable F-HUM-D settings in the event of a fault in the environment sensor. - Use it as a tentative remedy until the environment sensor is replaced. setting 0: off (default); 1: on (enable F-HUM-D setting)	2
F-HUM-D	Use it to manually set the humidity for the site of installation. - The machine assumes it as the output of the humidity sensor. - The setting will be valid only when F-HUM-SW is '1'. setting: 30 to 99 (default: 35(%))	2

<LCNS-TR>

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Sub-item	Description	Level
EX: ST-XXXX 1 () {0 to 0}	[1] [2] [1]: for state indication, 0: not installed (default); 1: installed [2]: for invalidation execution, 0: execute (input accepted only if '0') Procedure (invalidation of transfer) 1) Select SET-XXXX, and type in '0'; then, press the OK key. 2) See that a transfer license number (24 characters) is indicated for TR-XXXX.	
ST-SEND		2
TR-SEND	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for the SEND function as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-ENPDF	Use it to display the installation state/to execute transfer invalidation of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-ENPDF	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for the SEND encryption PDF transmission function as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-SPDF	Use it to display the installation state/to execute transfer invalidation of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-SPDF	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for the SEND searchable PDF transmission function as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-EXPPDF	Use it to display the installation state/to execute transfer invalidation of the PDF expansion (composite function of encryption PDF + searchable PDF) as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-EXPPDF	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for the PDF expansion kit (composite function of encryption PDF + searchable PDF) as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PDFDR	Use it to display the installation state/to execute transfer invalidation of the PDF direct transmission mechanism as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PDFDR	Use it to obtain a transfer license key as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-SCR	Use it to display the installation state/execute transfer invalidation of the encryption secured printing function as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-SCR	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for the encryption secured printing as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-CHSNG	Not used	2
TR-CHSNG	Not used	2
ST-BRDIM	Use it to display/execute transfer invalidation of Bar DIMM as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-BRDIM	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for bar DIMM as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-VNC	Use it to display the installation state/to execute transfer invalidation for VNC as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-VNC	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for VNC as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-WEB	Use it to display the installation state/execute transfer invalidation for a WEB browser as part of transfer invalidation.	2
TR-WEB	Use it to obtain a transfer license key for a WEB browser as part of transfer invalidation.	2
ST-WTMRK	Display the installation status of the tint block printing function in transfer invalidation. / Execute transfer invalidation.	2
TR-WTMRK	Obtain a transfer license key for the tint block printing function in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-TSPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF send function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-TSPDF	Obtain a transfer license key for the PDF send function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-USPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF send function with a user signature in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-USPDF	Obtain a transfer license key for the PDF send function with a user signature in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-DVPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF send function with a device signature in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-DVPDF	Obtain a transfer license key for the PDF send function with a device signature in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-SCPDF	Display the installation status of the scalable PDF send function in transfer invalidation.	2

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TR-SCPDPF	Obtain a transfer license key for the scalable PDF send function in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-AMS	Display the installation status of ACQ in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-AMS	Obtain a transfer license key for ACQ in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-ERDS	Display the installation status of the ERDS 3rd party advanced function in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-ERDS	Obtain a transfer license key for the ERDS 3rd party advanced function in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PS	Display the installation status of PS in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PS	Obtain a transfer license key for PS in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PCL	Display the installation status of PCL in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PCL	Obtain a transfer license key for PCL in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PSLI5	Display the installation status of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PSLI5	Obtain a transfer license key for PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-LIPS5	Display the installation status of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-LIPS5	Obtain a transfer license key for LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-LIPS4	Display the installation status of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-LIPS4	Obtain a transfer license key for LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PSPCL	Display the installation status of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PSPCL	Obtain a transfer license key for PS and PCL in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PCLUF	Display the installation status of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PCLUF	Obtain a transfer license key for PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PSLIP	Display the installation status of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PSLIP	Obtain a transfer license key for PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-PSPCU	Display the installation status of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-PSPCU	Obtain a transfer license key for PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-LXUFR	Display the installation status of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-LXUFR	Obtain a transfer license key for LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation.	2
ST-HDCR2	Display the installation status of complete HDD deletion in transfer invalidation.	2
TR-HDCR2	Obtain a transfer license key for complete HDD deletion in transfer invalidation.	2

5.5.2 FEEDER

5.5.2.1 FEEDER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-59

COPIER > FEEDER > OPTION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SIZE-SW	Use it to enable detection of a mix of AB and inch originals. setting 0: ON (do not detect; default); 1: OFF (detect)	1
LS-DBL	Use it to enable/disable ADF high-speed duplex mode. setting 0: enable (execute high-speed duplex mode; normal mode; default) 1: disable (do not execute high-speed duplex mode; low-speed duplex mode)	1
STAMP-SW	Use it to indicate the presence/absence of a stamp. (If fitted, set '1' for STAMP-SW). setting 0: stamp absent 1: stamp present (default)	1

5.5.3 SORTER

5.5.3.1 SORTER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-60

COPIER > SORTER > OPTION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
BLNK-SW	Use it to set the margin width on both sides of a crease when the saddle stitcher is in use. setting 0: normal width (5 mm) 1: extra width (10 mm; default)	1
MD-SPRTN	Use it to enable/disable accessory-independent mode in the event of a finisher error. setting 0: normal (disable accessory-independent mode; default) 1: enable (do not staple or align)	1

5.5.4 BOARD

5.5.4.1 BOARD List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-5-61

COPIER > BOARD > OPTION		
Sub-item	Description	Level
FONTDL	Use it to enable/disable display of the setting screen for font service when the PS kanji font downloaded is in use. setting 0: disable (do not display; default) 1: enable (display)	1
MENU-1 to 4	Use it to enable/disable display of levels 1 thorough 4 for the printer settings menu. setting 0: disable (do not display; default) 1: enable (display)	2

5.6 TEST (Test Print Mode)

5.6.1 COPIER

5.6.1.1 COPIER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

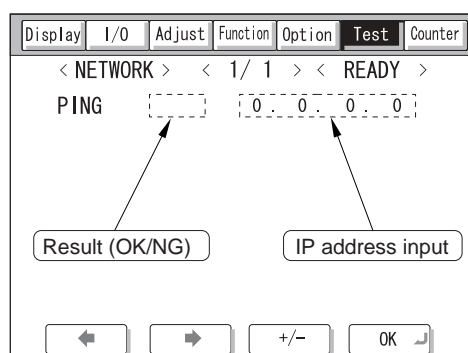
<PG>

COPIER > TEST > PG		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TYPE	Enter the type No. of the desired test print, and press the Start key to print out a test print. (Be sure to return it to '0' after printing.) 0: image from CCD (normal print) 1: grid 2: 17 gradations (error diffusion; T-BIC) 3: 17 gradations (dither screen) 4: blank 00H 5: halftone 80 H (error diffusion; T-BIC) 6: halftone 80 H (dither screen) 7: solid black FFH 8: horizontal line (space: 27 dots; line width: 4 dots) 9: horizontal line (space: 50 dots; line width: 6 dots) 10: horizontal line (space: 3 dots; line width: 2 dots) 11: halftone 60H (error diffusion; T-BIC) 12: halftone 60H (dither screen) 13: halftone 30H (error diffusion; T-BIC) 14: halftone 30H (dither screen) 15: 17 gradations (text mode) 16: 17 gradations (text/photo mode) 17: 17 gradations (print photo mode) 18: 17 gradations (film photo mode) 19: for R&D 20: 17 gradations (PDL screen: medium resolution) 21: 17 gradations (PDL screen: low resolution) 22: 17 gradations (PDL screen: high resolution) 23 to 30: for R&D	1
TXPH	Use it to switch between text mode or photo mode for test printing. setting: 0 to 4	1
PG-PICK	Use it to select the source of paper for test printing. 1: right deck 2: left deck 3: cassette 3 4: cassette 4 5-6: not used 7: side deck 8: multifeder	1
2-SIDE	Use it to select the output mode for test printing. setting 0: simplex 1: duplex (at time of shipment/upon RAM initialization: 0)	1
PG-QTY	Use it to select the output mode for test printing. Use it to set a copy count for test printing. 1 to 999 (default: 1)	1

<NETWORK>

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PING	Use it to check the connection between the machine and a network (only if TCP/IP). Use it when checking the connection at time of installation or in the event of a network connection fault.	1

- 1) Hold down the control panel switch to start shut-down sequence. When ready, turn off the main power switch.
- 2) Connect the network cable to the machine, and turn on the main power switch.
- 3) Inform the user's system administrator that the installation of the machine is over, and ask him/her to make network settings.
- 4) Inform the system administrator that you are going to check the network connection, and find out the remote host address (i.e., the IP address of a PC terminal on the user's network).
- 5) Make the following selections in service mode: COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING; then, type in the IP address you obtained in step 4) When ready, press the OK key and then the Start key.
 - The indication will be 'OK' if the connection to the network is correct. (End the work.)
 - If the indication is 'NG', on the other hand, check the connection of the network cable; if the cable is normal, go to step 6). If a fault is found in the cable, correct it, and go back to step 5).
- 6) Make the following selections in service mode: COPIES>TEST>NETWORK>PING. Then, enter the local host address (i.e., IP address of the machine), and press the OK key.
 - If the indication is 'NG', suspect a fault in the IP address of the machine or of the network controller. Ask the system administrator for a check on the IP address, or replace the main controller PCB.
 - If the indication is 'OK', on the other hand, the network settings and the network controller may be assumed to be normal. If so, suspect a fault in the user's network environment; report to the system administrator for remedial work.
- 7) Make the following selections in service mode: COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING; then, enter the local host address (i.e., IP address of the machine), and press the OK key.
 - If the notation is 'NG', suspect a fault in the IP address of the machine or in the network controller. Contact the system administrator to obtain the correct IP address or replace the main controller PCB.
 - If the notation is 'OK', the network settings and the network controller may be assumed to be free of faults. The fault is likely to be in the user's network environment. Contact the system administrator for remedial action.



F-5-7

5.7 COUNTER (Counter Mode)

5.7.1 COPIER

5.7.1.1 COPIER List

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<TOTAL>

T-5-64

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SERVICE1	total counter 1 for service Increases the count when paper is discharged outside the machine. (regardless of the size of paper, i.e., large or small) after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
SERVICE2	total counter 2 for service Increases the count when paper is discharge outside the machine. (in the case of large size, increases by 2; in the case of small size, increases by 1) after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
COPY	total copy counter Increases the count when copying is over and the paper is discharged outside the machine. after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
PDL-PRT	PDL print counter Increases the count when paper is discharged outside the machine or duplex stacking occurs to suit the charge counter in PDL print mode. in the case of a blank sheet, the count remains unchanged; for both large and small sizes, the count is increased by 1 after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
FAX-PRT	fax reception print counter Increases the count when paper is discharged outside the machine or duplex stacking occurs to suit the charge counter in fax reception mode. in the case of a blank sheet, the count remains unchanged; for both large and small sizes, the count is increased by 1; the reading may be reset after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
RMT-PRT	remote print counter Increases the count when paper is discharged outside the machine or duplex stacking occurs to suit the charge counter in remote print mode. in the case of a blank sheet, the count remains unchanged; for both large and small sizes, the count is increased by 1; the reading may be reset after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
BOX-PRT	box print counter Increase the count when paper is discharged outside the machine or duplex stacking occurs to suit the charge counter in box print mode. in the case of a blank sheet, the count remains unchanged; for both large and small sizes, the count is increased by 1; the reading may be reset after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
RPT-PRT	report print counter Increases the count when paper is discharged outside the machine or duplex stacking occurs to suit the charge counter in report print mode. in the case of a blank sheet, the count remains unchanged; for both large and small sizes, the count is increased by 1; the reading may be reset after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL		
Sub-item	Description	Level
2-SIDE	duplex copy/print counter Increases the count when paper is discharged outside the machine or when duplex stacking occurs to suit the charge counter and to indicate the number of duplex copies/prints. in the case of a blank sheet, the count remains unchanged; for both large and small sizes, the count is increases by 1; the reading may be reset after 99999999, reset to 00000000	1
SCAN	scan counter Increases the count when an original has been read, indicating the number of originals read. for both large and small sizes, the count is increased by 1; the reading may be reset after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1

<PICKUP>

T-5-65

COPIER > COUNTER > PICKUP		
Sub-item	Description	Level
C1/2/3/4	cassette 1/2/3/4 pickup total counter Indicates the number of sheets picked up from the cassette 1 (right deck)/2 (left deck)/3/4. after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
MF	manual feeder pickup total counter Indicates the number of sheets picked up from the manual feed pickup unit. after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
DK	deck pickup total counter Indicates the number of sheets picked up from the deck pickup unit. after 99999999, resets to 00000000	1
2-SIDE	duplex pickup total counter Indicates the number of sheets picked up for duplexing. after 99999999, resets to 00000000.	1

<FEEDER>

T-5-66

COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER		
Sub-item	Description	Level
FEED	ADF original pick total counter	1
DFOP-CNT	Indicates the number of times the ADF hinge has opened/closed. setting 0: OFF (default) 00000000 to 99999999	1

<JAM>

T-5-67

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM		
Sub-item	Description	Level
TOTAL	total jam counter	1
FEEDER	feeder total jam counter	1
SORTER	finisher total jam counter	1
2-SIDE	duplexing unit jam counter	1
MF	manual feed pickup jam counter	1
C1/2/3/4	right deck/left deck/cassette 3/cassette 4 jam counter	1
DK	side paper deck jam counter	1

<MISC>

T-5-68

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC		
Sub-item	Description	Level
FIX-WEB	fixing web counter (Be sure to reset the counter when the fixing web has been replaced.)	1
WST-TNR	collecting toner counter (Be sure to reset the counter when collecting toner has been disposed of.)	1

<PRDC-1>

T-5-69

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PRM-WIRE	primary charging wire counter	1
PRM-GRID	primary grid wire counter	1
PO-WIRE	pre-transfer charging wire counter	1
TR-WIRE	transfer charging wire counter	1

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1		
Sub-item	Description	Level
SP-WIRE	separation charging wire counter	1
PRM-CLN	primary charging wire cleaner counter	1
TR-CLN	transfer charging wire cleaner counter	1
PO-CLN	pre-transfer charging wire cleaner counter	1
SP-CLN	separation charging wire cleaner counter	1
TR-CLN2	transfer charging wire cleaner 2 counter	1
FIX-TH1	fixing main thermistor (THM1) counter	1
FIX-TH2	fixing sub thermistor (THM2) counter	1
OZ-FIL1	ozone filter	1
AR-FIL1	air filter 1	1
AR-FIL2	air filter 2	1

<DRBL-1>

T-5-70

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Sub-item	Description	Level
PRM-UNIT	primary charging assembly counter	1
PO-UNIT	pre-transfer charging assembly counter	1
PO-SCRPR	pre-transfer charging assembly scraper counter	1
T/S-UNIT	transfer/separation charging assembly counter	1
CLN-BLD	cleaner blade counter	1
SP-CLAW	cleaner separation claw counter	1
DVG-CYL	developing cylinder counter	1
DVG-ROLL	developing spacer counter	1
C3-PU-RL	cassette 3 pickup roller counter	1
C3-SP-RL	cassette 3 separation roller counter	1
C3-FD-RL	cassette 3 feed roller counter	1
C4-PU-RL	cassette 4 pickup roller counter	1
C4-SP-RL	cassette 4 separation roller counter	1
C4-FD-RL	cassette 4 feed roller counter	1
LD-PU-RL	left front deck pickup roller counter	1
LD-SP-RL	left front deck separation roller counter	1
LD-FD-RL	left front deck feed roller counter	1
RD-SP-RL	right front deck separation roller counter	1
RD-FD-RL	right front deck feed roller counter	1
RD-PU-RL	right front deck pickup roller counter	1
M-SP-RL	manual feed tray separation roller counter	1
M-FD-RL	manual feed tray feed roller counter	1
FX-UP-RL	fixing roller counter	1
FX-LW-RL	pressure roller counter	1
FX-IN-BS	fixing heat insulating bush counter	1
FX-WEB	Indicates the number of times the fixing web has been taken up. If you have replaced the web, be sure to reset the reading in service mode: COPIER>COUNTER>MISC>FIX-WEB, COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-WEB.	1
DLV-UCLW	delivery upper separation claw counter	1
DLV-LCLW	delivery lower separation claw counter	1

<DRBL-2>

T-5-71

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DF-PU-RL	Indicates the number of sheets picked up by the ADF pickup roller. (counter reading retained by the controller PCB) for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increased by 1 (regardless of the number of sides); also, there is no distinction between large and small sizes	1
DF-SP-PL	Indicates the number of sheets separated by the ADF separation pad. setting rage/setting item 00000000 to 99999999	1
DF-SP-PD	Indicates the number of sheets separated by the ADF separation pad. (counter reading retained by the controller PCB) for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increase by 1 (regardless of the number of sides); also, there is no distinction between large and small sizes	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
Sub-item	Description	Level
DF-FD-RL	Indicates the number of sheets feeded by the ADF feed roller. (counter reading retained by the controller PCB) in the case of simplex mode, the count is increased by 1 for each original read; in the case of duplex mode, the count is increased by 3 for each original read (to accommodate 3 feeding sessions, i.e., face, back, and idle); there is no distinction between large and small sizes	1
LNT-TAP1	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the ADF dust-collecting tape. for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increased by 1 for each original read (not its sides)	1
LNT-TAP2	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the ADF dust-collecting tape. for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increased by 1 for each original read (not its sides)	1
LNT-TAP3	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the ADF dust-collecting tape. for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increased by 1 for each original read (not its sides)	1
LNT-TAP4	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the ADF dust-collecting tape. for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increased by 1 for each original read (not its sides)	1
LNT-TAP5	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the ADF dust-collecting tape. for both simplex and duplex modes, the count is increased by 1 for each original read (not its sides)	1
STAMP	number of times the stamp solenoid has gone on	1
PD-PU-RL	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the paper deck pickup roller. (counter reading retained by the controller PCB)	1
PD-SP-RL	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the paper deck separation roller. (counter reading retained by the controller PCB)	1
PD-FD-RL	Indicates the number of sheets moving past the controller PCB. (counter reading retained by the controller PCB)	1
SORT	Sort counter The large and small sizes are not distinguished from each other.	1
FIN-STPR	stapler (handling tray assembly)	1
SADDLE	Saddle paper transport counter The large and small sizes are not distinguished from each other.	1
SDL-STPL	Indicates the number of times the stapler (saddle assembly) has operated. (counter reading retained by the DC controller PCB)	1
PUNCH	Punching counter	1
FIN-BFFRL	Indicates the number of times the puncher has swung.	1

Chapter 6 Outline of Components

6.1 Clutch/Solenoid

6.1.1 Clutches and Solenoids

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<Reader Unit>

The reader unit does not have clutches and solenoids.

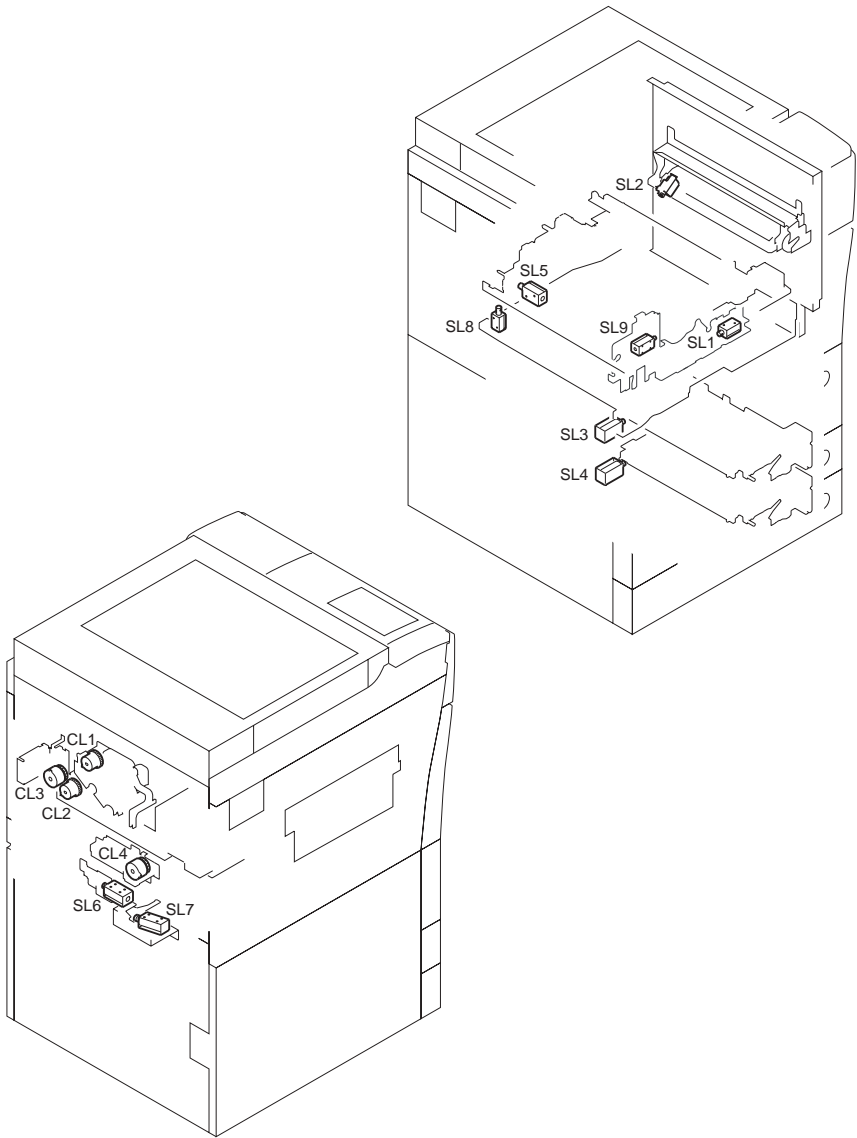
<Printer Unit>

T-6-1

Notation	Name	Description	Remarks
CL1	developing cylinder clutch	drives the developing cylinder	
CL2	registration clutch	drives the registration roller	
CL3	manual feed pickup clutch	drives the manual feed pickup roller	
CL4	left deck pull-off clutch	drives the left deck pull-off roller	
SL1	fixing inlet guide drive solenoid	drives the fixing inlet guide	
SL2	manual feed pickup solenoid	drives the manual feed pickup solenoid release	
SL3	cassette 3 pickup solenoid	drives the cassette 3 pickup	
SL4	cassette 4 pickup solenoid	drives the cassette 4 pickup	
SL5	delivery flapper solenoid	drives the delivery flapper	
SL6	right deck pickup solenoid	drives the right deck pickup	
SL7	left deck pickup solenoid	drives the left deck pickup	
SL8	reversing flapper solenoid	drives the reversing flapper	
SL9	fixing web drive solenoid	drives the fixing web	

T-6-2

Notation	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Duplexing drive PCB	Motor driver PCB	DC controller PCB
CL1	FK2-0852	CL>4			J108
CL2	FK2-0856	CL>5			J106
CL3	FK2-0851	CL>1			J108
CL4	FK2-0850	CL>2			J115
SL1	FK2-0841	SL>9 (recover) (SL10) (plunger drawn)			J106
SL2	FK2-0832	SL>5			J108
SL3	FH7-5702	SL>3			J110
SL4	FH7-5702	SL>4			J110
SL5	FK2-0835	SL>7			J106
SL6	FK2-0836	SL>1		J2105/ J2101	J104
SL7	FK2-0836	SL>2			J102
SL8	FK2-0838	SL>8	J2306/ J2302		J107
SL9	FK2-0839	SL>11			J106



F-6-1

6.2 Motor

6.2.1 Motors

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

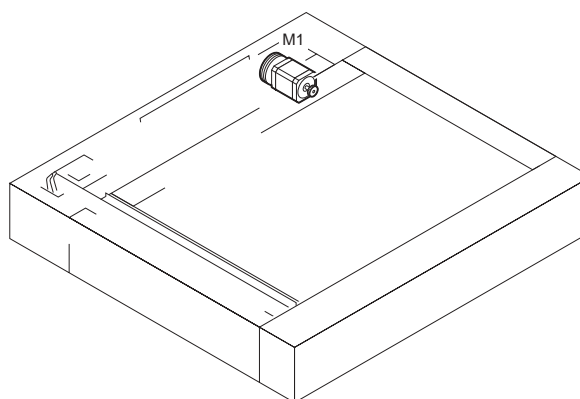
<Reader Unit>

T-6-3

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	E code
M501	scanner motor	drives the No. 1/No. 2 mirror base	FK2-3773	E202

T-6-4

Notation	Connector	
	I/F PCB	reader controller PCB
M501	J306/308	J202



F-6-2

<Printer Unit>

T-6-5

Notation	Name	Description	Remarks
M1	drum motor	drives components associated with the photosensitive drum	
M2	main motor	drives major components of the printer unit	
M3	fixing motor	drives the fixing assembly	
M4	right deck lifter motor	drives the Lifter of the right deck	
M5	Left deck lifter motor	drives the lifter of the left deck	
M6	primary charging wire cleaning motor	drives the primary charging wire cleaner	
M7	pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor	drives the pre-transfer charging wire cleaner	
M8	transfer separation charging wire cleaning motor	drives the transfer separation charging wire cleaner	
M9	hopper stirring motor	stirs toner inside the sub hopper, supplies toner to the developing assembly	
M10	toner supply motor	supplies toner from the toner bottle	
M11	right deck pickup motor	drives the right deck pickup	
M12	cassette 3/4 pickup motor	drives cassette 3/4 pickup	
M13	delivery motor	drives the delivery assembly	
M14	reversal motor	drives the reversing assembly	
M15	shutter motor	drives the fixing assembly shutter	
M16	duplexing horizontal registration motor	drives the horizontal registration mechanism of the duplexing assembly	
M17	pre-registration motor	drives the pre-registration roller	
M18	duplexing feed right motor	drives the right side of the duplexing feed assembly	
M19	duplexing feed left motor	drives the left side of the duplexing feed assembly	
M20	cassette 3 lifter motor	drives the lifter of the cassette 3	
M21	cassette 4 lifter motor	drives the lifter of the cassette 4	
M22	laser scanner motor	drives the polygon mirror	
M24	left deck pickup motor	drives the left deck pickup mechanism	
M25	vertical path duplexing feed motor	drives the curl-imparting roller, drives the duplexing outlet roller	
M26	vertical upper motor	drives the pickup vertical path 1/2 roller	
M27	vertical lower motor	drives the pickup vertical path 3/4 roller	

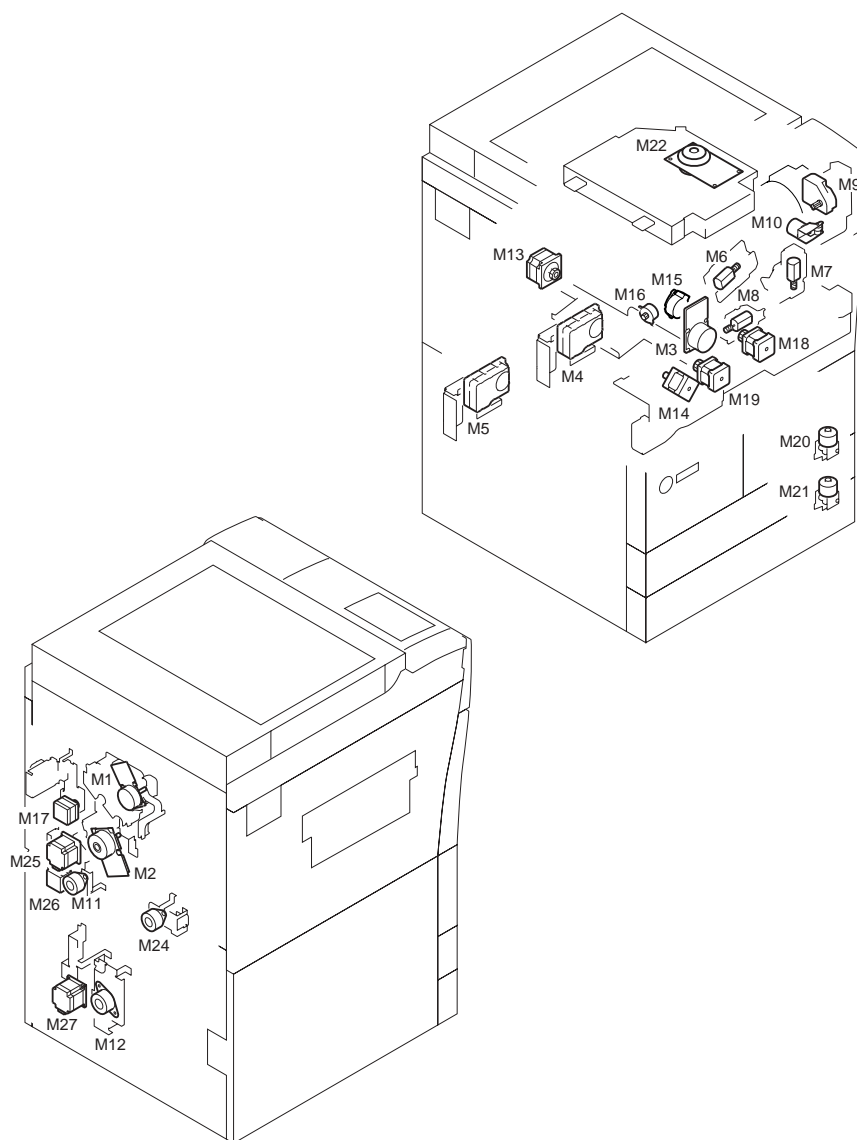
T-6-6

Notation	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error
M1	FK2-3689	MTR>2	E012-0000
M2	FK2-3491	MTR>3	E010-0000
M3	FK2-3690	MTR>4	E014-0000
M4	FK2-0017	MTR>25	
M5	FK2-0017	MTR>26	
M6	FH5-1138	MTR>17	
M7	FH6-1038	MTR>18	
M8	FH6-1038	MTR>19	
M9	FK2-0813	MTR>20 (CW) MTR>21(CCW)	
M10	FK2-0015	MTR>22	
M11	FK2-3475	MTR>5	
M12	FK2-3475	MTR>7	
M13	FK2-0827	MTR>14	
M14	FK2-4564	MTR>12	
M15	FK2-0828	MTR>24	
M16	FK2-0144	MTR>23	
M17	FK2-4563	MTR>15	
M18	FK2-0826	MTR>13	
M19	FK2-0826	MTR>16	
M20	FK2-0814	MTR>27	
M21	FK2-0814	MTR>28	
M22	FM2-0018	MTR>1	E110-0001
M24	FK2-3475	MTR>6	
M25	FK2-0824	MTR>8	
M26	FK2-0820	MTR>10	
M27	FK2-0822	MTR>9	

T-6-7

Notation	Duplexing drive PCB	Motor driver PCB	Video PCB	DC controller PCB
M1				J108
M2				J108
M3				J106
M4		J2105/J2113		J105
M5		J2105/J2113		J105
M6				J103
M7				J103
M8				J106
M9				J103
M10				J103
M11		J2102/J2101		J104
M12		J2104/J2101		J104
M13				J106
M14	J2305/J2302			J107
M15				J128

Notation	Duplexing drive PCB	Motor driver PCB	Video PCB	DC controller PCB
M16	J2306/J2302			J107
M17		J2102/J2101		J104
M18	J2307/J2302			J107
M19	J2305/J2302			J107
M20				J113
M21				J113
M22			J1406/	J116
M24		J2103/J2101		J104
M25		J2112/J2101		J104
M26		J2102/J2101		J104
M27		J2110/J2101		J104



F-6-3

6.3 Fan

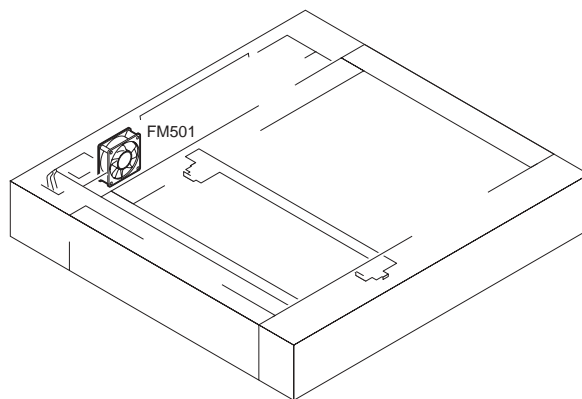
6.3.1 Fans

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<Reader Unit>

T-6-8

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Connector	
				Interface PCB	Reader controller PCB
FM501	reader unit cooling fan	cools the reader unit	FK2-0636	J313/J308	J202



F-6-4

<Printer Unit>

T-6-9

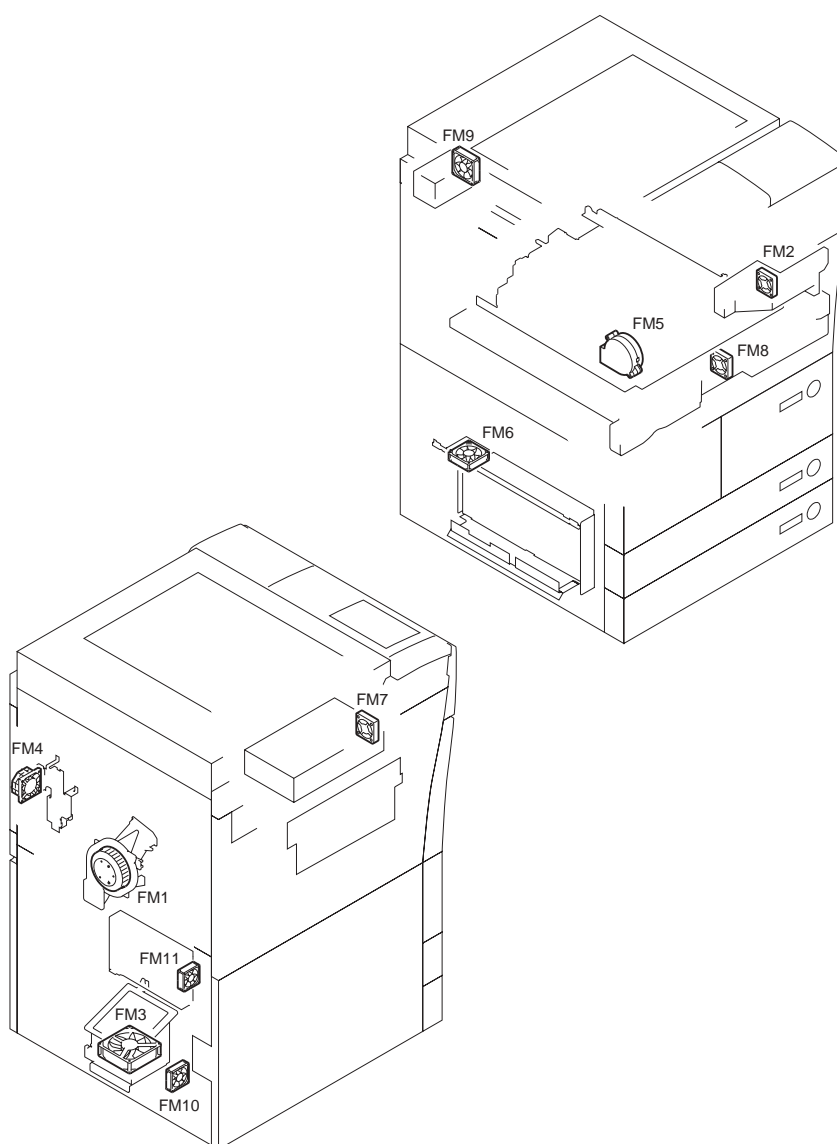
Notation	Name	Description
FM1	feed fan	discharges heat from the fixing unit
FM2	primary charging cooling fan	cools the primary charging assembly and the cleaner
FM3	heat discharge fan	discharges exhaust from fans to the outside of the machine
FM4	controller cooling fan	cools the laser assembly, developing assembly, drive assembly, controller
FM5	curl-removing fan	removes curl from print paper after fixing
FM6	DC power supply fan	cools the power supply PCB
FM7	fixing heater power supply cooling fan	cools the power supply for fixing
FM8	duplexing feed fan	cools the duplexing feed motor
FM9	circulation duct fan	cools the inside of the machine
FM10	accessories power supply cooling fan	cools the accessories power supply
FM11	HVT fan	cools the HVT unit

T-6-10

Notation	Parts No.	I/O		Error
FM1	FH5-1117	P013-0: half-speed P013-1: full-speed	1:ON	E805-0002
FM2	FK2-0103	P013-2: half-speed P013-3: full-speed	1:ON 1:OM	E824-0001
FM3	FH5-1118	P013-6: half-speed P013-7: full-speed	1:ON 1:ON	E805-0001
FM4	FK2-0844	P014-2: half-speed P014-3: full-speed	1:ON 1:ON	E121-0001
FM5	FH6-1548	P014-6: half-speed P014-7: full-speed	1:ON 1:ON	-
FM6		P012-3	1:ON	E804-0000
FM7	FK2-0795	P014-0 P014-1	1:ON 1:ON	E804-0001
FM8	FH6-1742	P014-5	1:ON	-
FM9	FK2-0103	P023-2	1:ON	-
FM10	FK2-0472	P015-1: half-speed P015-2: full-speed	1:ON	E804-0002
FM11	FH6-1742	P013-4: half-speed P013-5: full-speed	1:ON	-

T-6-11

Notation	DC power supply PCB	Duplexing PCB	DC controller PCB
FM1			J109
FM2			J103
FM3			J111
FM4			J108
FM5			J106
FM6	PN4001/J4002		J102
FM7			J124
FM8		J2303/J2302	J107
FM9			J124
FM10			J6503
FM11			J137



F-6-5

6.4 Sensor

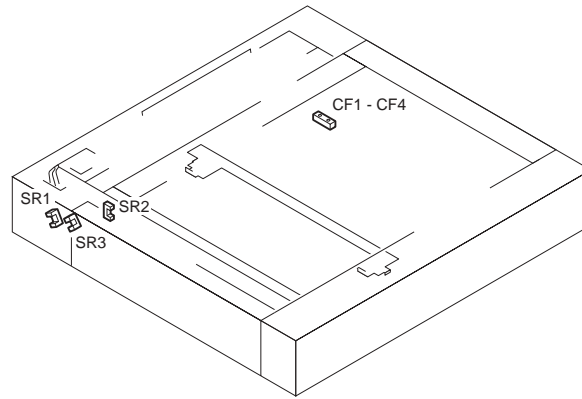
6.4.1 Sensors

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<Reader Unit>

T-6-12

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	Connector No.	
				Interface PCB	Reader controller PCB
SR1	ADF open/closed 1 sensor	detects the state (open/closed) of the ADF	FK2-0149	J310/308	J202
SR2	Scanner HP sensor	detects scanner home position	FK2-0149	J310/308	J202
SR3	ADF open/closed 2 sensor	detects the timing of original size	FK2-0149	J310/308	J202
CF1-CF4	original size sensor	detects the original size	FK2-0238		J207(AB) J208(INCH)



F-6-6

<Printer Unit>

T-6-13

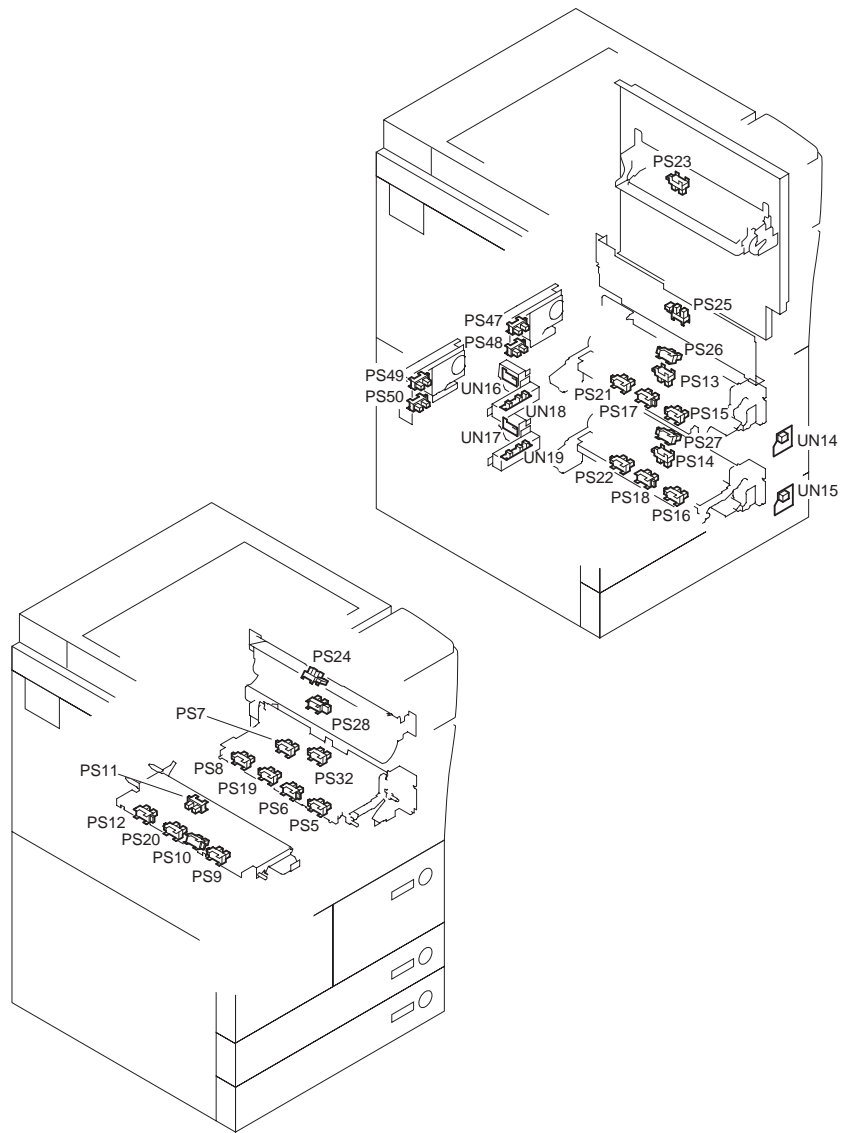
Notation	Name	Description
PS2	Right lower cover open/closed sensor	detects the Right lower cover open/closed
PS3	Manual feed tray open/closed sensor	detects the manual feed tray open/closed
PS4	Claw jam sensor	detects the claw jam
PS5	Right deck open/closed sensor	detects the right deck open/closed
PS6	Right deck lifter sensor	detects the right deck lifter
PS7	Right deck paper sensor	detects paper in the right deck
PS8	Right deck limit sensor	detects the right deck limit
PS9	Left deck open/closed sensor	detects the left deck open/closed
PS10	Left deck lifter sensor	detects the left deck lifer
PS11	Left deck paper sensor	detects paper in the left deck
PS12	Left deck limit sensor	detects the left deck limit
PS13	Cassette 3 paper sensor	detects paper in the cassette 3
PS14	Cassette 4 paper sensor	detects paper in the cassette 4
PS15	Cassette 3 open/closed sensor	detects the cassette 3 open/closed
PS16	Cassette 4 open/closed sensor	detects the cassette 4 open/closed
PS17	Cassette 3 lifter sensor	detects the cassette 3 lifter
PS18	Cassette 4 lifter sensor	detects the cassette 4 lifter
PS19	Right deck re-try sensor	detects the right deck re-try
PS20	Left deck re-try sensor	detects the left deck re-try
PS21	Cassette 3 re-try sensor	detects the cassette 3 re-try
PS22	Cassette 4 re-try sensor	detects the cassette 4 re-try
PS23	Manual feed paper sensor	detects the Manual feed paper
PS24	Vertical path 1 paper sensor	detects the vertical path 1 paper
PS25	Vertical path 2 paper sensor	detects the vertical path 2 paper
PS26	Vertical path 3 paper sensor	detects the vertical path 3 paper
PS27	Vertical path 4 paper sensor	detects the vertical path 4 paper
PS28	Laser write start sensor	detects the laser write start
PS29	Registration paper sensor	detects the registration paper
PS30	Duplex pre- registration sensor	detects the duplex pre- registration
PS31	Duplex horizontal registration sensor	detects the duplex horizontal registration
PS32	Right deck feed paper sensor	detects the right deck feed paper

Notation	Name	Description
PS33	Left deck feed paper sensor	detects the left deck feed paper
PS34	Duplexing paper sensor	detects the duplexing paper
PS35	Internal delivery sensor	detects the internal delivery
PS36	External delivery sensor	detects the external delivery
PS37	Reversal sensor 1	detects the reversal 1
PS38	Reversal sensor 2	detects the reversal 2
PS45	Fixing web length sensor	detects fixing web length
PS46	Delivery jam sensor	detects the delivery jam
PS47	Right deck level sensor (upper)	detects the right deck level (upper)
PS48	Right deck level sensor (lower)	detects the right deck level (lower)
PS49	Left deck level sensor (upper)	detects the left deck level (upper)
PS50	Left deck level sensor (lower)	detects the left deck level (lower)
PS51	Fixing inlet sensor	detects the fixing inlet
PS52	Fixing outlet sensor	detects the fixing outlet
PS53	Shutter HP sensor	detects the shutter HP
PS54	Toner access cover open/closed sensor	detects the toner access cover open/closed
UN13	Manual feed tray paper width sensor PCB	Detects the width of paper on the manual feed tray
UN14	Cassette 3 level sensor PCB	Detects the level of paper in the cassette 3
UN15	Cassette 4 level sensor PCB	Detects the level of paper in the cassette 4.
UN16	Cassette 3 paper width sensor PCB	Detects the width of paper in the cassette 3.
UN17	Cassette 4 paper width sensor PCB	Detects the width of paper in the cassette 4.
UN18	Cassette 3 paper length sensor PCB	Detects the length of paper in the cassette 3.
UN19	Cassette 4 paper length sensor PCB	Detects the length of paper in the cassette 4.

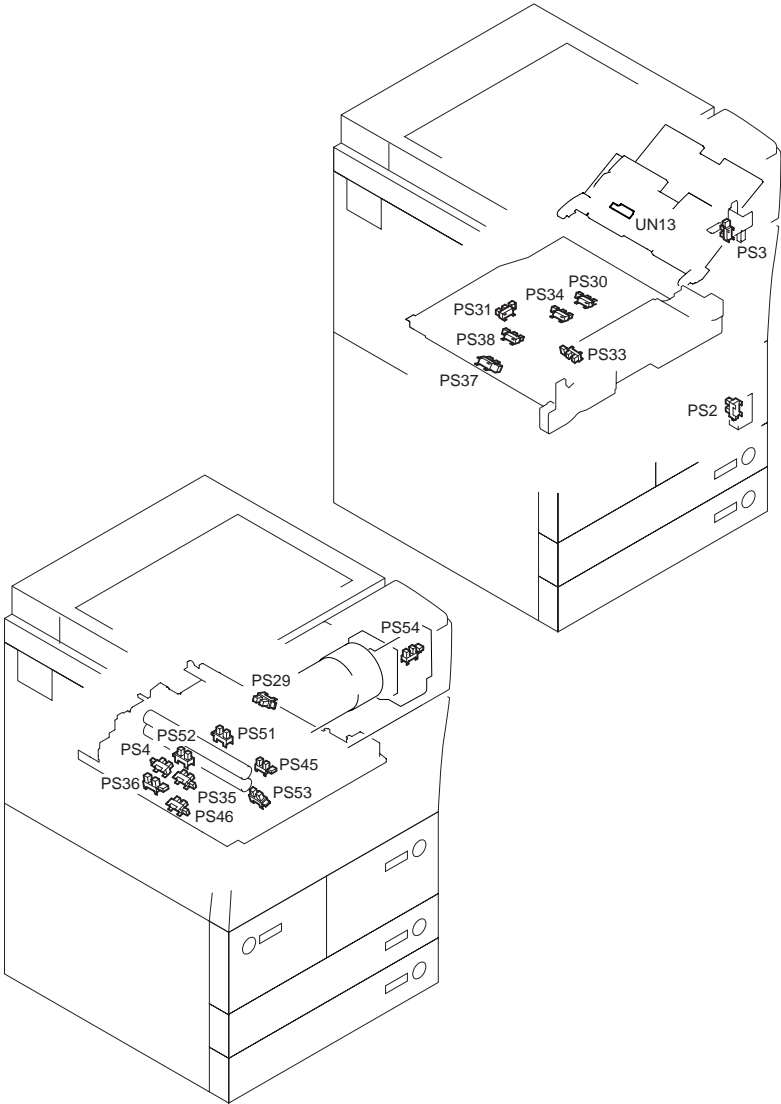
T-6-14

Notation	Parts No.	I/O		DC controller PCB	JAM
PS2	FK2-0149	P009-13	0:open	J113	
PS3	FK2-0149	P009-0	0:open	J103	
PS4	FK2-0149	P001-14	0:present	J106	xx0F
PS5	FK2-0149	P009-11	0:open	J112	
PS6	FK2-0149	-	-	J112	
PS7	FK2-0149	P001-7	1:present	J112	
PS8	FK2-0149	P002-4	1:present	J112	
PS9	FK2-0149	P009-12	0:open	J115	
PS10	FK2-0149	-	-	J115	
PS11	FK2-0149	P001-9	1:present	J115	
PS12	FK2-0149	P008-4	1:present	J115	
PS13	FK2-0149	P001-3	1:present	J110	
PS14	FK2-0149	P001-5	1:present	J110	
PS15	FK2-0149	P009-8	0:open	J110	
PS16	FK2-0149	P009-9	0:open	J110	
PS17	FK2-0149	-	-	J110	
PS18	FK2-0149	-	-	J110	
PS19	FK2-0149	P001-2	1:present	J112	xx0B
PS20	FK2-0149	P002-2	1:present	J115	xx0C
PS21	FK2-0149	P002-0	1:present	J110	xx0D
PS22	FK2-0149	P002-1	1:present	J110	xx0E
PS23	FK2-0149	P001-0	0:present	J108	
PS24	FK2-0149	P001-8	1:present	J113	xx03
PS25	FK2-0149	P001-10	1:present	J113	xx04
PS26	FK2-0149	P001-4	1:present	J110	xx05
PS27	FK2-0149	P001-6	1:present	J110	xx06
PS28	FK2-0149	P002-8	1:present	J113	xx02
PS29	FK2-0149	P001-1	1:present	J106	xx01
PS30	FK2-0149	P002-5	1:present	J107	xx16

Notation	Parts No.	I/O		DC controller PCB	JAM
PS31	FK2-0149	P002-6	0:present	J107	
PS32	FK2-0149	P009-2	1:present	J112	xx07
PS33	FK2-0149	P001-15	1:present	J107	xx08
PS34	FK2-0149	P002-11	1:present	J107	xx15
PS35	FK2-0149	P001-12	0:present	J106	xx10
PS36	FK2-0149	P001-11	1:present	J106	xx11
PS37	FK2-0149	P002-3	1:present	J107	xx14
PS38	FK2-0149	P002-7	1:present	J107	xx13
PS45	FK2-0149	P002-12	1:absent	J128	
PS46	FK2-0149	P008-09	1:present	J106	xx12
PS47	FK2-0149	P006-8	1:present	J115	
PS48	FK2-0149	P006-12	1:present	J115	
PS49	FK2-0149	P006-9	1:present	J115	
PS50	FK2-0149	P006-13	1:present	J115	
PS51	FK2-0149	P008-8	1:present	J106	xx18
PS52	FK2-0149	P002-13	1:present	J106	xx17
PS53	FK2-0149	P002-14	0:HP	J106	
PS54	FK2-0149	P009-14	0:open	J103	
UN13	FG5-6231	-	-	J108	
UN14	FG6-1941	P009-5	1:present	J113	
UN15	FG6-1941	P009-6	1:present	J113	
UN16	FG5-1957	-	-	J111	
UN17	FG5-1957	-	-	J125	
UN18	FG5-9581	-	-	J111	
UN19	FG5-9581	-	-	J125	



F-6-7



F-6-8

6.5 Switch

6.5.1 Switches

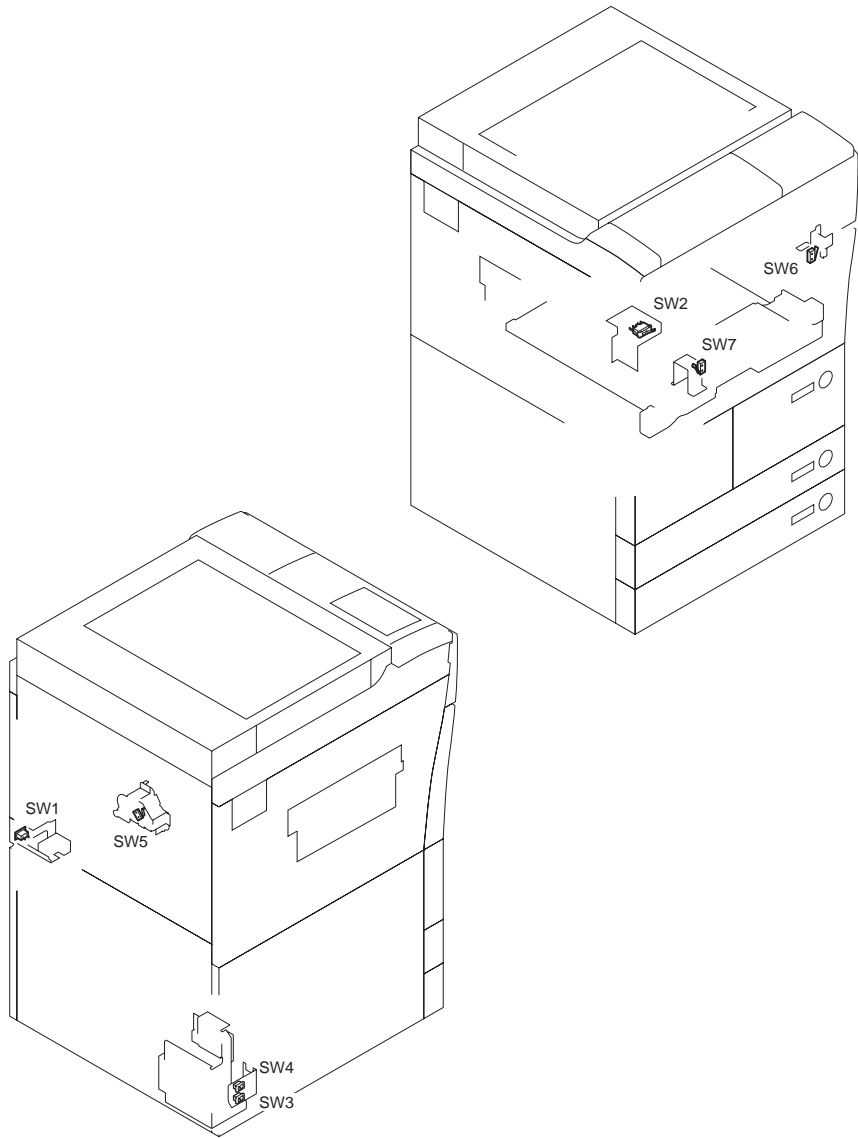
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<Reader Unit>
The reader unit does not have switches.

<Printer Unit>

T-6-15

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.
SW1	main power switch	turns on/off the main power	FK2-0796
SW2	front cover switch	detects the state (open/closed) of the front cover	WC4-5125
SW3	environment switch	turns on/off the drum heater	WC1-5179
SW4	cassette heater switch	turns on/off the cassette heater	WC1-5179
SW5	waste toner feedscrew lock detection switch	detects the state (locked) of the collecting toner feedscrew	WC4-0153
SW6	manual feed tray open/closed detection switch	detects the state (open/closed) of the manual feed tray	WC4-5112
SW7	fixing feeding unit detection switch	detects the presence/absence of the fixing feeding unit	WC4-5112



F-6-9

6.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others

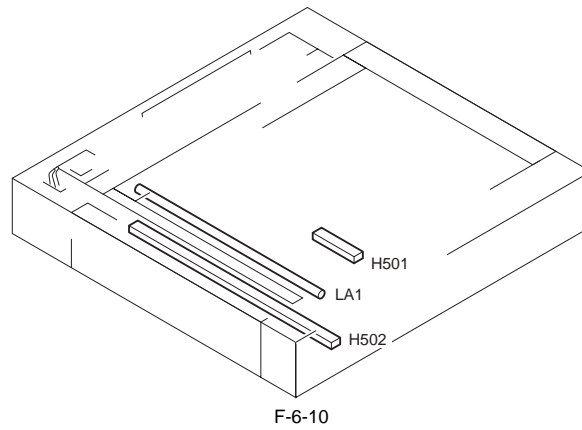
6.6.1 Lamps, Heaters, and Others

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<Reader Unit>

T-6-16

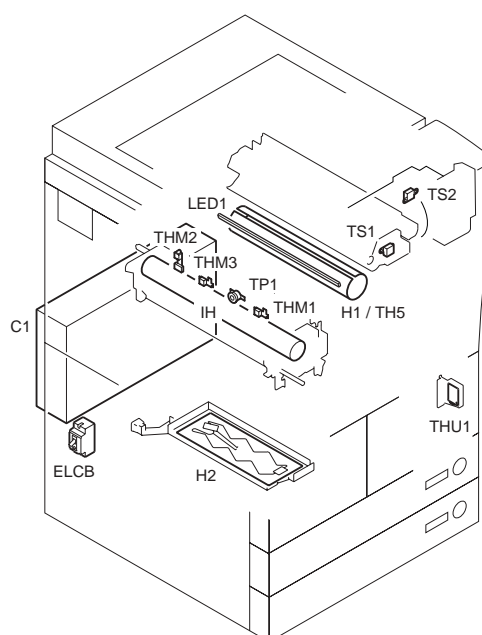
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.
H501	lens heater	prevents condensation on the lens	F26-4601 (100V; option)
			FK2-0228 (230V; service part)
H502	mirror heater	prevents condensation on the mirror	F26-4601 (100V; option)
			FK2-0229 (230V; service part)
LA1	scanning lamp	illuminates originals	FM2-3184 (100V/230V) FM2-3185 (120V)



<Printer Unit>

T-6-17

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.
LED1	pre-exposure lamp (LED)	removes residual charges from the surface of the photosensitive drum	FK2-3694 (pre-exposure unit) iR5075/iR5075
			FH7-3412 (pre-exposure unit) iR5065/iR5065N/iR5055/iR5065
IH	fixing heater	heats the fixing roller	FK2-0807
H1	drum heater	prevents condensation on the photosensitive drum	FK2-0786 (100V)
			FK2-0787 (120V)
			FK2-0788 (230V)
H2	cassette heater	prevents condensation in cassette (dries paper inside)	FK2-0789 (100V)
			FK2-0790 (230V; service part)
THM1	fixing main thermistor	performs fixing temperature control, detects error	FK2-5252 (thermistor unit)
THM2	fixing sub thermistor	performs fixing temperature control, detects error	FK2-0811
THM3	shutter thermistor	performs fixing temperature control, detects error	FK2-5252 (thermistor unit)
TP1	fixing thermal switch	serves as a safety mechanism for the fixing assembly	FK2-0808
ELCB	leakage breaker	prevents leakage of current	FH7-7626 (100V)
			FK2-0014 (120V)
			FH7-7625 (230V)
TS1	developing assembly toner sensor	detects the level of toner remaining inside the developing assembly	FK2-0812
TS2	sub hopper toner level sensor	detects the level of toner remaining inside the hopper	FK2-0812
THU1	temperature/humidity sensor	measures the temperature/ humidity inside the machine	WP2-5200
C1	charger unit	supplementary power supply device when printer and reader are made to work at the same time	FM2-9631 iR5075/5075N only



F-6-11

6.7 PCBs

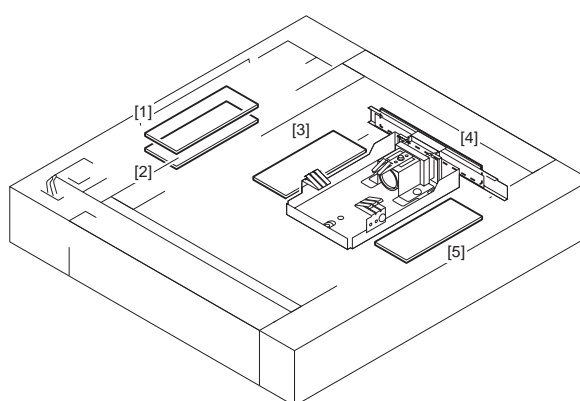
6.7.1 PCBs

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

<Reader Unit>

T-6-18

Ref.	Name	Description	Parts No.
[1]	interface PCB	serves as the interface with the printer and ADF	FM3-0471
[2]	Memory PCB		FM3-0472
[3]	reader controller PCB	controls the reader unit	FM3-0470
[4]	CCD/AP PCB	performs analog image processing	FM2-4818 (CCD unit)
[5]	inverter PCB	drives the scanning lamp	FK2-0630



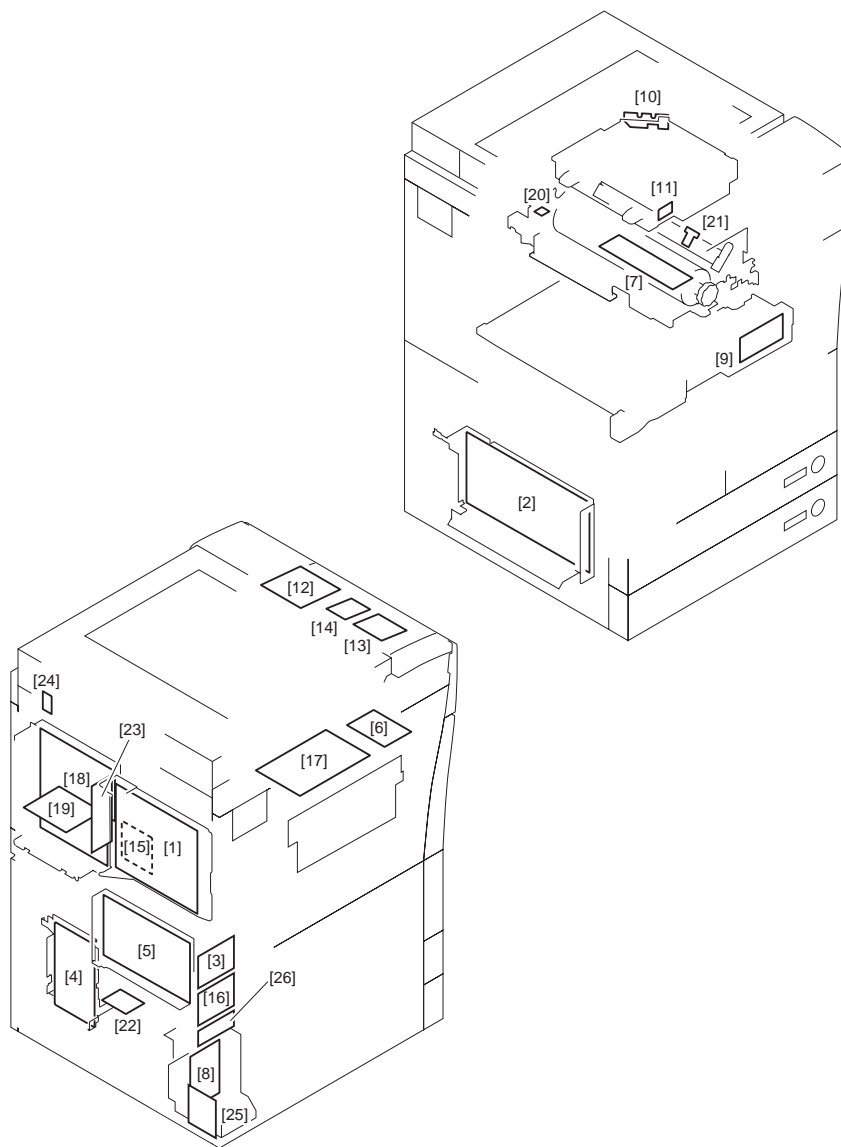
F-6-12

<Printer Unit>

T-6-19

Ref.	Name	Description	Parts No.
[1]	DC controller PCB	controls the power supply to the printer unit/finisher	FM2-9857
[2]	DC power supply PCB	supplies DC power	FK2-3472Åi100V/120VÅj
			FK2-3473Åi230VÅj
[3]	AC driver PCB	controls the AC circuitry	FM2-9861 (100V; AC driver unit)
			FM2-9861 (120V; AC driver unit)
			FM2-9862 (230V; AC driver unit)

Ref.	Name	Description	Parts No.
[4]	motor driver PCB	controls the motor	FM2-9895
[5]	HVT1 PCB	generates high voltage	FM2-9897 iR5065/iR5065N/iR5055/iR5055N
			FM2-9859 iR5075/iR5075N
[6]	potential PCB	controls the surface potential of the photosensitive drum	FM2-0839
[7]	drum heater control PCB	controls the drum heater	FM2-0841 (100V/120V)
			FM2-0842 (230V)
[8]	option power supply PCB	supplies power to the finisher	FK2-2660Äi100VÄj
			FK2-2661Äi230VÄj
			FK2-3476(100/230 universal)
[9]	duplexing drive PCB	controls the sensors, motors, and solenoids of the duplexing unit	FM2-9903
[10]	laser drive PCB	controls the laser drive	FM2-9860 (laser scanner unit)
[11]	BD developing PCB	detects the laser beam	FM2-0859 (laser scanner unit)
[12]	control panel keypad PCB	controls the keys and LEDs	FM2-1250
[13]	control panel CPU PCB	controls the control panel	FM2-1249
[14]	control panel inverter PCB	adjusts the contrast of the control panel	FM2-1251
[15]	rush-current prevention PCB	prevents rush current to the fixing feeding/duplexing unit	FG6-4978
[16]	capacitor PCB	removes noise	FM2-9864 (100V/120V; AC driver unit)
			FM2-9896 (230V; AC driver unit)
[17]	fixing heater power supply PCB	controls the fixing heater	FM2-3647 (100V)
			FM2-3648 (120V)
			FM2-3649 (230V)
[18]	main controller PCB	performs digital image processing/system control	FM3-0221
[19]	PCI expansion PCB	serves as a relay PCB	FM2-5429 (option)
[20]	drum cleaner thermistor PCB	detects clogging of the cleaner	FM2-3661
[21]	potential sensor PCB	measures the photosensitive drum surface potential	FM2-3657
[22]	reader relay PCB	generates high voltage	FM3-0233
[23]	Video PCB	image control	FM2-9868
[24]	Separation claw AC PCB	generating the separation claw bias	FM3-0957
[25]	Filter PCB	removing the noise	FM2-9865 (100V)
			FM2-9866 (120V/230V)
[26]	13V converter PCB	generates 13V	FM2-9869



F-6-13

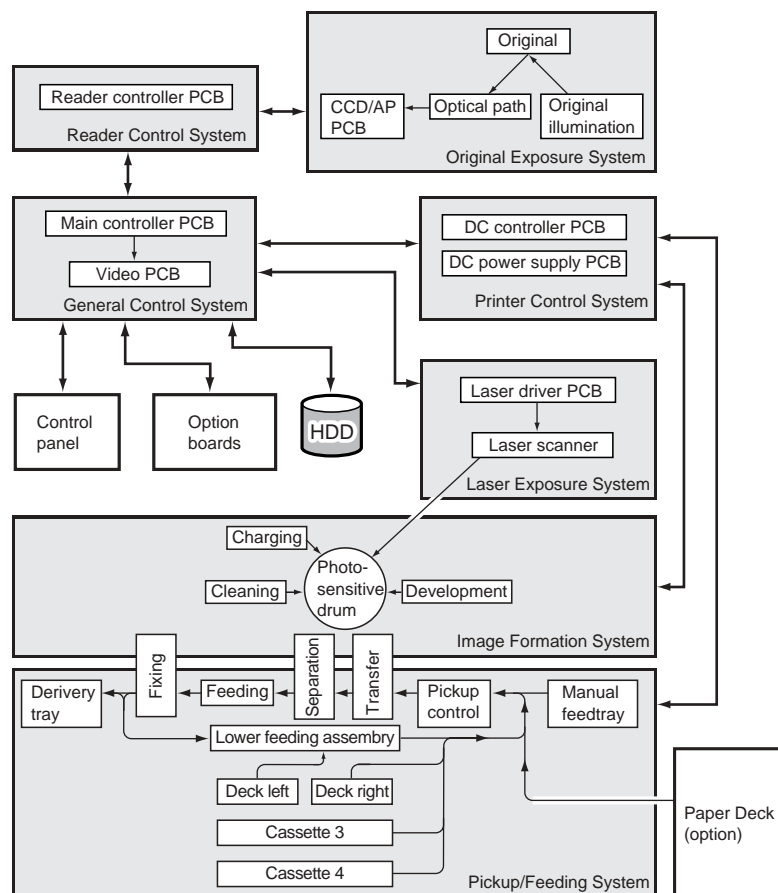
Chapter 7 System Construction

7.1 Construction

7.1.1 Functional Construction

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

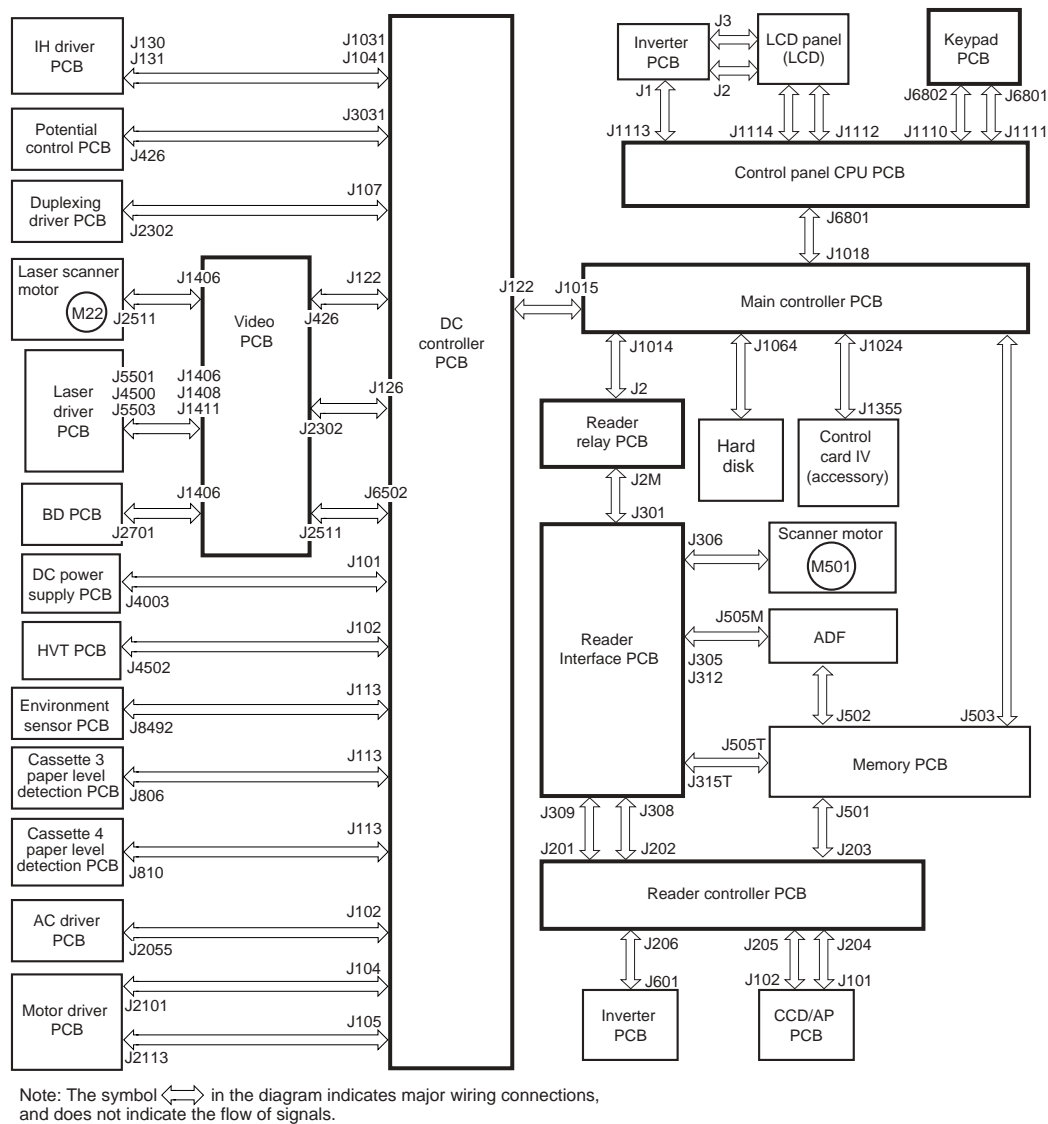
The machine may be divided into the following seven functional blocks:



F-7-1

7.1.2 Wiring Diagram of the Major PCBs

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N



F-7-2

7.1.3 Controlling the Main Motor (M2)

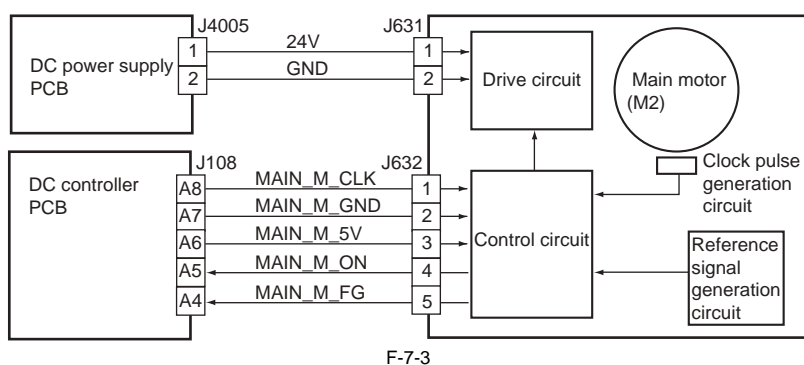
iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The functions of the main motor control circuit are as shown in the following table, and its block diagram is shown in the following figure:

T-7-1

Item	Description
Power supply	24V is supplied by the DC controller PCB
drive signal	from the DC controller PCB (MAIN_M_ON)
Operating/driving	Collecting toner feedscrew Cleaning assembly Registration roller Manual feed pickup assembly Left deck feed roller 2 Developing assembly unit
Control	Turning on/off the motor Controlling the motor to a specific speed
Error detection	code E010

- 1) When the main motor drive signal (MAIN_M_ON) goes '1', the main motor starts to rotate.
- 2) When the main motor rotates, clock pulse signals (MAIN_M_FG) are generated. If the DC controller PCB detects an error in clock pulse signals, it will indicate "E010" in the control panel.

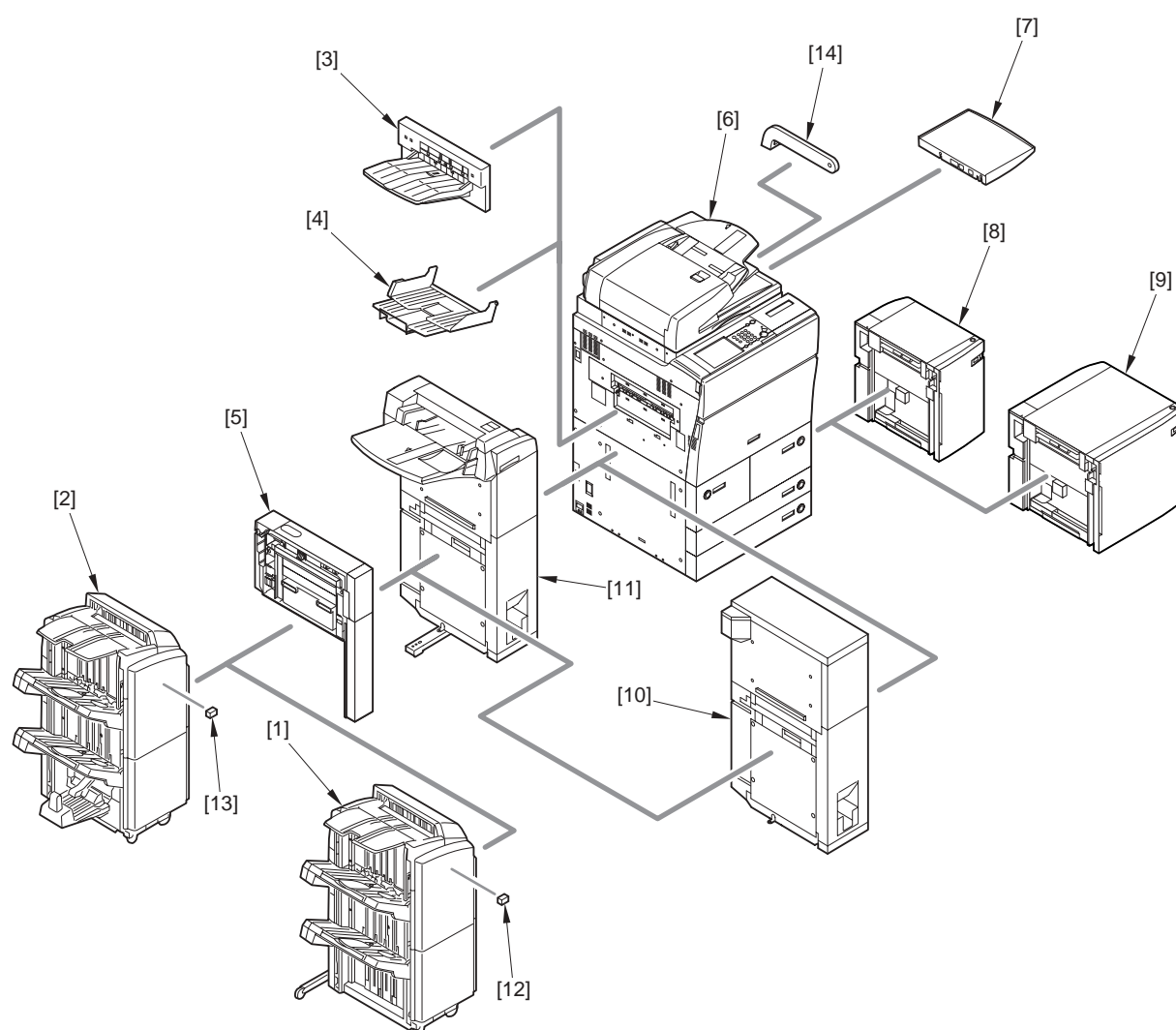


7.2 System Construction

7.2.1 System Configuration with Pickup/Delivery Accessories (230V)EUR

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The following shows a typical system configuration:



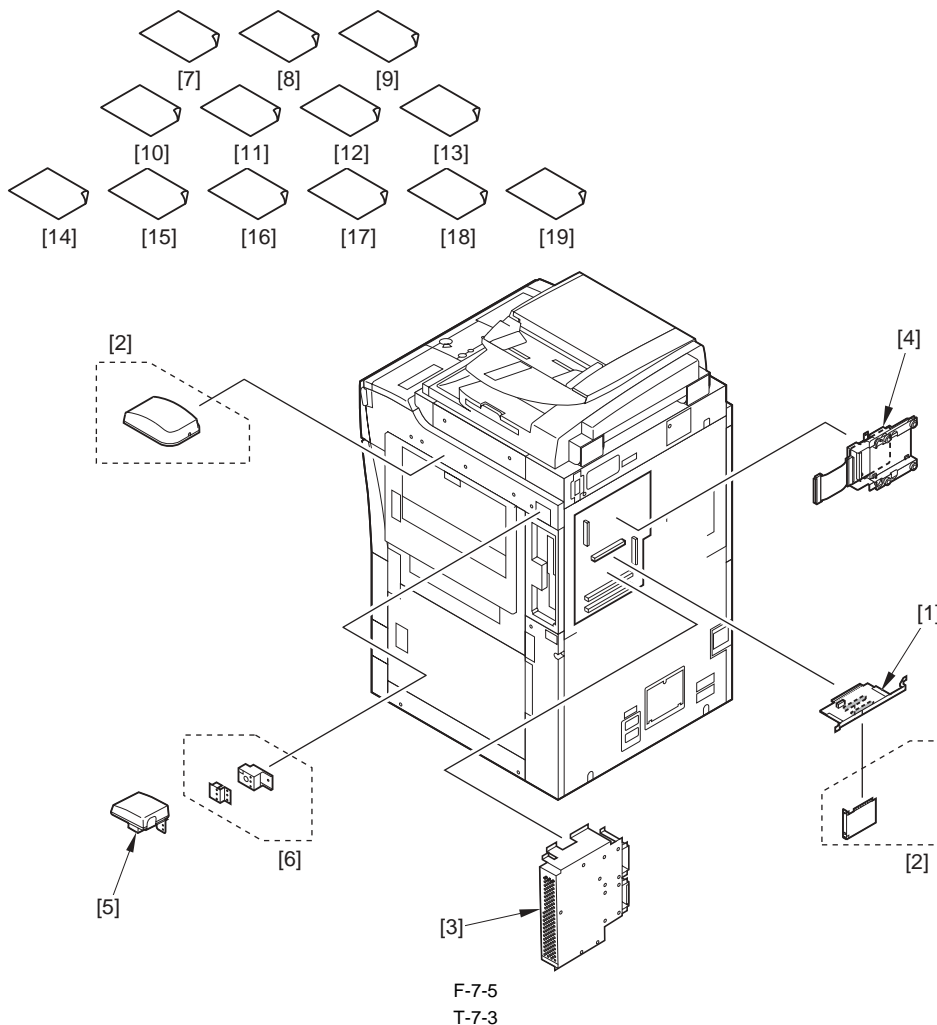
- [1] Finisher-AD1
- [2] Saddle Finisher-AD2
- [3] Shift Tray-D1
- [4] Copy Tray-L1
- [5] Puncher Unit-AS1/AU1/AV1
- [6] DADF-S1 (standard)
- [7] Document Tray-M1

- [8] Paper Deck-AD1 (A4)
- [9] Paper Deck-AE1 (A3)
- [10] Paper Folding Unit-E1
- [11] Document Insertion/ Folding Unit-F1
- [12] Staple Cartridge-J1
- [13] Staple Cartridge-D2/D3
- [14] ADF Access Handle-A1

7.2.2 System Configuration with Printing/Transmission Accessories (230V)EUR

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The following shows a typical system configuration:



- [1] Expansion Bus-D2
- [2] Voice Guidance Kit-B1
- [3] Super G3 FAX Board-Z1
- [4] HDD Data Encryption Kit-B2
- [5] Card Reader-C1
- [6] Card Reader Attachment-C2
- [7] HDD Data Erase Kit-A1 (license certificate)
- [8] UFR II/PCL Printer Kit-R1 (license certificate)
- [9] PS Printer Kit-R1 (license certificate)
- [10] Barcode Printing Kit-A1 (license certificate)
- [11] Encrypted Printing Software-C1 (license certificate)
- [12] Universal Send Searchable PDF Kit-A1 (license certificate)
- [13] Digital User Signature PDF Kit-A1 (license certificate)
- [14] Web Access Software-F1 (license certificate)
- [15] Remote Operator's Software Kit-A2 (license certificate)
- [16] Secure Watermark-A1 (license certificate)
- [17] AMS KIT (license certificate)

[18] Universal Send Trial Kit-C1 (license certificate) (standard)

[19] Canon Universal Send Kit-F1 (license certificate)

7.2.3 Functions and Printing/Transmission Accessories (230V)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The following shows the accessories needed for individual functions:

T-7-4

Function	Accessory needed
LIPS printing	LPS V Expansion Kit-R1
transmission	SEND Expansion Kit-Q1
faxing	Super G3 Fax Board-Z1
LIPS printing + transmission	LIPS V Expansion Kit-R1 SEND Expansion Kit-Q1
LIPS printing + faxing (1-line)	LIPS V Expansion Kit-R1 Super G3 Fax Board-Z1
MEAP function (w/ copy boot ROM)	- no need for memory expansion both MEAP authentication and MEAP application operation possible
MEAP function (w/ LIPS LX boot ROM)	- if only MEAP authentication is desired no need for memory expansion; if MEAP application is installed, device will not start up (indicating 'E604-0001') - if both MEAP authentication and MEAP application are desired
MEAP application USB connection	HDD Data Encryption Kit-B2 Expansion Bus-D2
security function (HDD formatting + encryption)	HDD Data Encryption Kit-B2 HDD Data Erase Kit-A1 Expansion Bus-D2
PDF/TIFF/JPEG direct printing	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Unit-R1 LIPS V Expansion Kit-R1 Direct Printing Expansion Kit-F1
searchable PDF function	SEND Expansion Kit-Q1 Universal Send Searchable PDF Kit-A1
Electronic signature PDF function	User Signature PDF-A1
voice guidance	Voice Guidance Kit-B1 Expansion Bus-D2
remote operation	Remote Operation Kit-A1
Web browsing	Web Browser Expansion Kit-C2
Secure print function	Encrypted Printing Software A1

7.3 Product Specifications

7.3.1 Product Specifications

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

Copyboard	stream reading, fixed reading
Body	console
Light source type	xenon lamp (yellow green)
Lens type	fixed focus
Photosensitive medium	A-Si drum (80-mm dia.)
Image reading method	light-receiving element (1 line CCD), CIS
Reproduction method	indirect electrostatic
Exposure method	laser light
Copy density adjustment function	auto or manual

Charging method	corona
Development method	dry, 1-component toner projection
Transfer method	Static transfer
Separation method	static separation
Pickup method	from cassette, manual feeder, paper deck
Cassette pickup method	separation retard
Paper deck pickup method	separation retard
Multifeeder pickup method	separation retard
Drum cleaning method	Cleaning blade
Fixing method	Heat roller fixing (H method)
Delivery method	face-down, face-up
Toner level detection function	yes
Toner type	Magnetic negative toner
Toner supply type	Toner bottle replacement
Original type	sheet, book, 3-D object (2 kg max.)
Maximum original size	304.8mm x 432mm
Original size detection function	main scanning: CCD size detection sub scanning: reflective document sensor
Reproduction ratio	100% (1:1), reduce (1:0.250, 1:0.500, 1:0.611, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:0.865), enlarge (1:1.154, 1:1.224, 1:1.414, 1:2.000, 1:4.000), between (1:0.250 to 4.000) (25% and 400%, in 1%-increments)
Warm-up time	30sec or less
Maximum non-image width (main scanning direction)	2mm or less
Maximum non-image width (sub scanning direction)	2mm or less
Image margin (leading edge)	4.0±1.5/-1.0mm
Image margin (trailing edge)	2.0±1.5mm
Image margin (left/right)	left: 2.5±1.5mm (2nd side: 2.5±2.0mm), right: 0.5mm or more
Non-image width (leading edge)	4.0±1.5/-1.0mm
Non-image width (trailing edge)	2.0±1.5mm
Non-image width (left/right)	2.5±1.5mm
Number of gradations	256 gradations
Reading resolution	600dpi x 600dpi
Copying resolution	600dpi (equivalent) x 600dpi, 1200dpi (equivalent) x 600dpi, 2400dpi (equivalent) x 600dpi
Printing resolution	1200dpi (equivalent) x 1200dpi
First copy time	iR5075N: 3.1sec iR5065 / iR5065N / iR5055 / iR5055N : 3.3sec
Cassette capacity	1200 sheets (64g/m ²), 1100 sheets (80g/m ²)
Multifeeder tray capacity	50 sheets (64, 80g/m ²)
Paper deck capacity	3400 sheets (64g/m ²), 3000 sheets (80g/m ²)
Duplex method	Through-pass method/Stackless
Delivery tray stack	Copy tray: 250 sheets (80g/m ²) Shift tray: 500 sheets (80g/m ²)
Continuous reproduction	1 - 999
Memory	1GB
Operating environment (temperature range)	15 to 27.5 deg C
Operating environment (humidity range)	25 to 75%
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	0.6 to 1.0 atm
Noise	standby: 58 dB or less, printing: 75 dB or less
Hard disk	40GB
Power supply rating	100V 15A/ 120V 20A/ 230V 10A
Sleep mode	yes
Power consumption (maximum)	1500W (100V), 1920W (120V), 2300W (230V)
Power consumption	continuous printing (100V, 50Hz, w / accessories) : 923 Wh (reference only)
Ozone	Initial: 0.01ppm or less (avr), Later (after 500,000 pages): 0.035 ppm or less (avr)
Dimensions	643mm(W) x 743mm(D) x 1207mm(H)(Including an ADF) * Only for Japan (with a capacitor): 643mm(W) x 839mm(D) x 1207mm(H)
Weight	220kg (Including an ADF and toner bottle) * Only for Japan (with a capacitor): 230kg

7.4 Function List

7.4.1 Paper Types

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-7-5

Type		Paper size	Paper feeding position				
			Cassette	Deck (left/right)	Manual feed	3.5 side paper deck	3.5 large paper deck
Plain paper (60 to 90g/m ²) Recycled paper Colored paper Environment paper 3-hole paper 4-hole paper		A4,B5,LTR	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
		A3,B4,LDR,LGL	yes	no	yes	no	yes
		A4R,LTRR	yes	no	yes	no	yes
		B5R	yes	no	yes	no	no
		A5R,STMTR	yes	no	yes	no	no
		A5,STMT	no	no	no	no	no
Thick paper (91 to 200g/m ²) Bond paper		A4,B5,LTR	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
		A3,B4,LDR,LGL	yes	no	yes	no	yes
		A4R,LTRR	yes	no	yes	no	yes
		B5R	yes	no	yes	no	no
		EXEC	no	no	yes	no	no
		A5R,STMTR	yes	no	yes	no	no
		A5,STMT	no	no	no	no	no
Special paper	OHP film	A4,A4R,LTR,LTRR	no	no	yes	no	no
	Postcard	A4R deformed, Double postal card, Four-face postcard	no	no	yes	no	no
	Label	A4,A4R,B4,LTR,LTRR	no	no	yes	no	no
	Index (tab) paper	A4,LTR	yes	no	no	no	no
	Tracing paper	A3,B4,A4R,A4,B5R,B5	no	no	yes	no	no

7.4.2 Printing Speed

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-7-6

Classification	Paper size	E232				E232A				E232B			
		Single-sided		Double-sided		Single-sided		Double-sided		Single-sided		Double-sided	
		Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed
Plain paper Colored paper Recycled paper Environment paper 3-hole paper 4-hole paper	A4	75	53	37	26	65	46	32	23	55	46	27	23
	B5	75	53	37	26	65	46	32	23	55	46	27	23
	A5R	35	35	17	17	35	35	17	17	35	35	17	17
	B5R	63	47	31	23	55	41	27	20	46	41	23	20
	A4R	54	44	27	21	47	38	23	19	40	38	20	19
	B4	45	38	22	19	39	33	19	16	39	33	19	16
	A3	37	33	18	16	32	29	16	14	32	29	16	14
	LTR	75	53	37	26	65	46	32	23	55	46	27	23
	STMTR	35	35	17	17	35	35	17	17	35	35	17	17
	LTRR	58	45	28	22	50	39	25	19	43	39	21	19
	LGL	45	38	22	19	39	33	19	16	39	33	19	16
Thick paper	LDR	37	33	18	16	32	29	16	14	32	29	16	14
	A4	63	53	31	26	55	46	27	23	55	46	27	23
	B5	63	53	31	26	55	46	27	23	55	46	27	23
	A5R	28	28	14	14	28	28	14	14	28	28	14	14
	B5R	53	47	26	23	46	41	23	20	46	41	23	20
	A4R	46	44	23	21	40	38	20	19	40	38	20	19
	B4	38	38	19	19	33	33	16	16	33	33	16	16
	A3	31	31	15	15	27	27	13	13	27	27	13	13
	LTR	63	53	31	26	55	46	27	23	55	46	27	23
	STMTR	28	28	14	14	28	28	14	14	28	28	14	14
	LTRR	50	45	24	22	43	39	21	19	43	39	21	19
Bond paper	LGL	38	38	19	19	33	33	16	16	33	33	16	16
	LDR	31	31	15	15	27	27	13	13	27	27	13	13
	LTR	35	35	17	17	30	30	15	15	30	30	15	15
	LTRR	24	24	12	12	21	21	10	10	21	21	10	10
	EXEC	-	35	-	-	-	30	-	-	-	30	-	-

Classification	Paper size	E232				E232A				E232B			
		Single-sided		Double-sided		Single-sided		Double-sided		Single-sided		Double-sided	
		Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed	Deck cassette feed *1	Multi manual feed
Tracing paper	A4	-	53	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	46	-	-
	B5	-	53	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	46	-	-
	B5R	-	47	-	-	-	41	-	-	-	41	-	-
	A4R	-	44	-	-	-	38	-	-	-	38	-	-
	B4	-	38	-	-	-	33	-	-	-	33	-	-
	A3	-	31	-	-	-	27	-	-	-	27	-	-
OHP	A4	-	53	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	46	-	-
	A4R	-	44	-	-	-	38	-	-	-	38	-	-
	LTR	-	53	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	46	-	-
	LTRR	-	45	-	-	-	39	-	-	-	39	-	-
Postcard	Postcard	-	15	-	-	-	15	-	-	-	15	-	-
	Double postal card	-	28	-	-	-	28	-	-	-	28	-	-
	Four-face postcard	-	53	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	46	-	-
Label	A4	-	53	-	-	-	46	-	-	-	46	-	-
	A4R	-	44	-	-	-	38	-	-	-	38	-	-
	B4	-	38	-	-	-	33	-	-	-	33	-	-
Tab paper	A4	59	-	-	-	51	-	-	-	51	-	-	-
	LTR	59	-	-	-	51	-	-	-	51	-	-	-

*1: "Deck/cassette feed" includes feeding by the side paper deck.

7.4.3 Paper Types/Printing Speed (K paper)

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

T-7-7

Type		Paper size	Paper feeding position				
			Cassette	Deck (left/ right)	Manual feed	3.5 side paper deck	3.5 large paper deck
Plain paper (60 to 90g/m2) Recycled paper Colored paper Environment paper 3-hole paper 4-hole paper	A4,B5,LTR		yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
	A3,B4,LDR,LGL		yes	no	yes	no	yes
	A4R,LTRR		yes	no	yes	no	yes
	B5R		yes	no	yes	no	no
	A5R,STMTR		yes	no	yes	no	no
	A5,STMT		no	no	no	no	no
Thick paper (91 to 200g/m2) Bond paper	A4,B5,LTR		yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
	A3,B4,LDR,LGL		yes	no	yes	no	yes
	A4R,LTRR		yes	no	yes	no	yes
	B5R		yes	no	yes	no	no
	EXEC		no	no	yes	no	no
	A5R,STMTR		yes	no	yes	no	no
	A5,STMT		no	no	no	no	no
Special paper	OHP film	A4,A4R,LTR,LTRR	no	no	yes	no	no
	Postcard	A4R deformed, Double postal card, Four- face postcard	no	no	yes	no	no
	Label	A4,A4R,B4,LTR,LTRR	no	no	yes	no	no
	Index (tab) paper	A4,LTR	yes	no	no	no	no
	Tracing paper	A3,B4,A4R,A4,B5R,B5	no	no	yes	no	no

Chapter 8 Upgrading

8.1 Upgrading

8.1.1 Outline of Upgrading the Machine

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

The machine and its accessories may be upgraded by replacing DIMM-ROM or using the Service Support Tool (hereafter, SST) installed on a personal computer (PC).

The following table shows the various system software used in conjunction with the machine and how they may be upgraded.

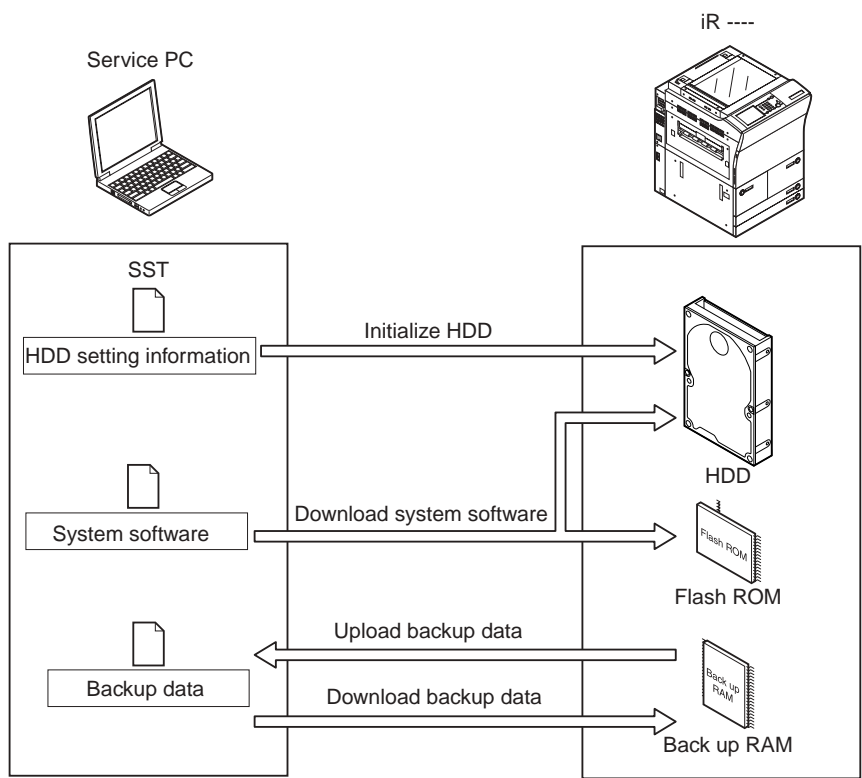
T-8-1

Type	Type of system software	Method of upgrading		Remarks
		SST	ROM-DIMM replacement	
Machine				
	System (main controller)	Yes	No	The machine controller is also used to control the Super G3 Fax Board.
	Language (language mode)	Yes	No	
	RUI (remote user interface)	Yes	No	
	Boot (boot program)	Yes	Yes	
	MEAP CONT (MEAP library)	Yes	No	
	SDICT (OCR dictionary)	Yes	No	
	KEY (encryption communication key)	Yes	No	
	TTS (voice dictionary)	Yes	No	
	DCON (DC controller)	Yes	No	
	RCON (reader controller)	Yes	No	The reader controller is also used to control the ADF.
Accessory				
	Multi-FAX Board	Yes	Yes	
	Fin_A series (Finisher-AD1/Saddle Finisher-AE2)	Yes	No	A special service tool (downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is needed.
	DADF-S1	Yes Ver.3.3 or later	No	A special service tool (downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is needed.

8.1.2 Outline of the Service Support Tool

iR5065 / iR 5055 / iR5075 / iR5075N / iR5065N / iR5055N

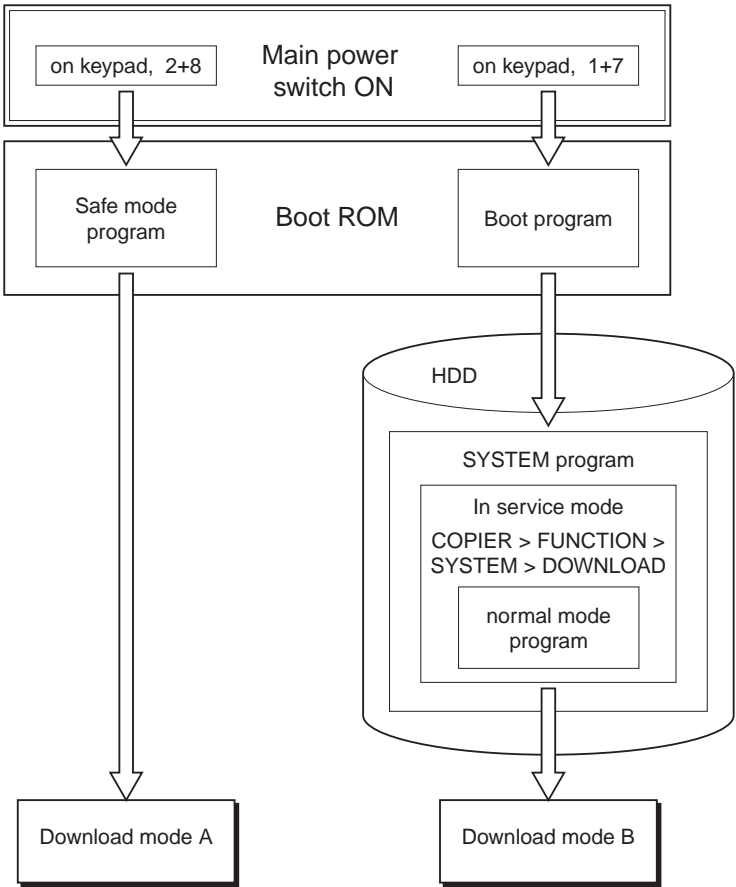
The Service Support Tool (hereafter, SST) has the following functions:



F-8-1

The machine must be in download mode when the SST is used.
The download control program comes in 2 types:

- Normal Mode (download mode B)**
turn on the main power while holding down 1+7; then, make the following selections in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM>DOWNLOAD
- Safe Mode(download mode A)**
turn on the main power while holding down 2+8



F-8-2



Use safe mode for the following:

- when you have replaced the HDD.
- when the system fails to start up normally.

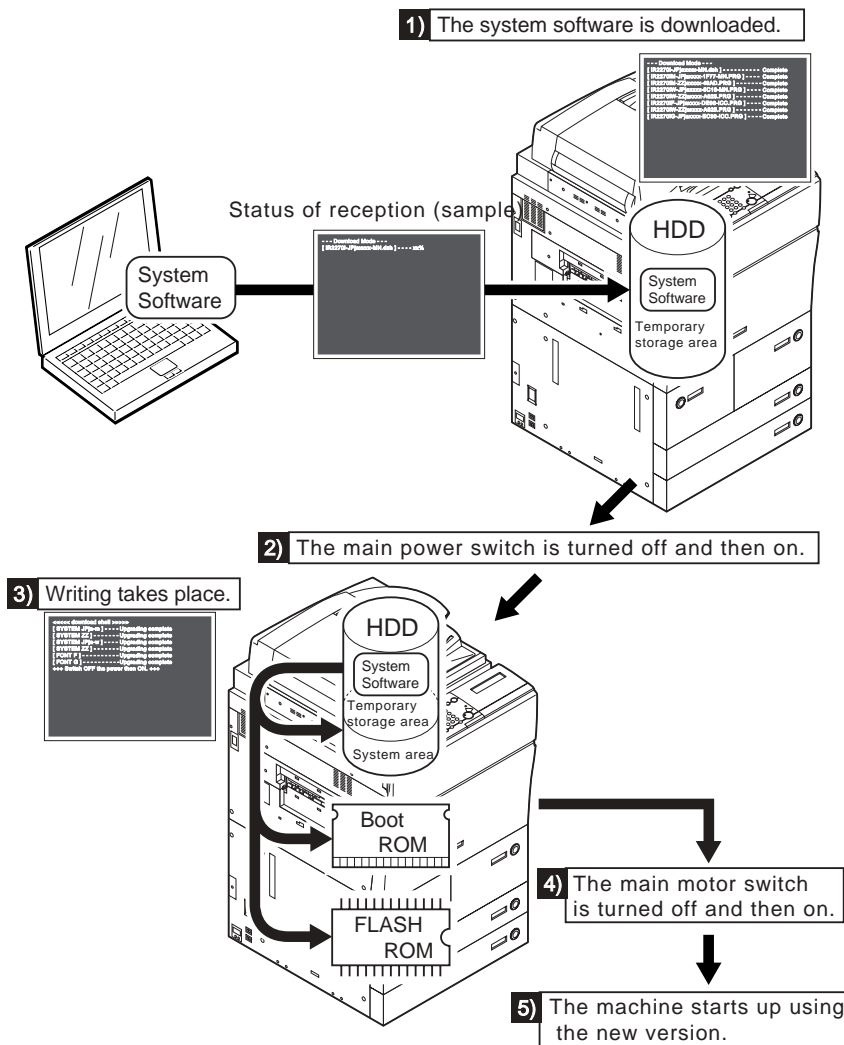
The following table shows the functions that may be used in download mode with the SST in use:

T-8-2

Function	Download mode	
	Normal mode (download mode B)	Safe mode (download mode A)
Formatting the HDD	- -	Entire HDD BOOTDEV
	FSTDEV TMP_GEN TMP_PSS TMP_FAX APL_SEND APL_MEAP APL_GEN PDL_DEV FSTCDEV	- - - - - - - - -
Downloading the system software	-System -Language -RUI -Boot -G3FAX -Dcon -Rcon -SDICT -MEAPCONT -KEY -TTS	-System -Language -RUI -Boot - -Dcon -Rcon -SDICT -MEAPCONT -KEY -TTS
Uploading/downloading backup data	- -	-SramImg -Meapback

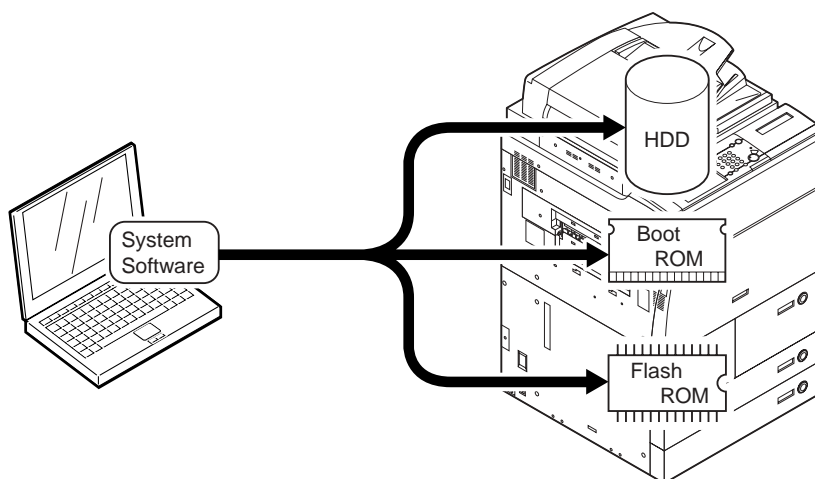
Installing the System Software

The system software that has been downloaded by the SST (version 3.33 or later) is saved in the temporary storage area of the HDD. You must then turn off and then on the main power switch so that the system software will be written to the system area and flash ROM when the machine starts up. When you turn off and then on the main power switch for a second time, the machine will start up using the new version of the system software.



F-8-3

If a previous version of the SST is used for downloading, the system software will be written directly to the HDD, boot ROM, and flash ROM. The previous version of the SST is not enable to use for this model.



F-8-4

Mar 28 2007

